Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Security Configuration Guide, Release 6.x

First Published: 2013-11-20

Last Modified: 2020-04-09

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

CONTENTS

Preface

This preface includes the following sections:

Audience

This publication is for network administrators who install, configure, and maintain Cisco Nexus switches.

Document Conventions

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
bold	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
Italic	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).
[x | y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.
{x | y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y | z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.

Convention	Description
`variable`	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
`screen font`	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
`boldface screen font`	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
italic screen font	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
< >	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[ ]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches

The entire Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switch documentation set is available at the following URL:

http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps13386/tsd_products_support_series_home.html

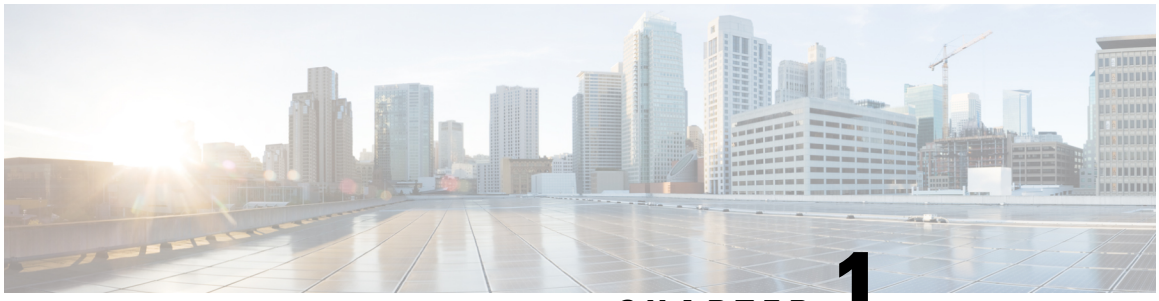
Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to nexus9k-docfeedback@cisco.com. We appreciate your feedback.

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request

For information on obtaining documentation, using the Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST), submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation* at: http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/general/whatsnew/whatsnew.html.

Subscribe to *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation*, which lists all new and revised Cisco technical documentation as an RSS feed and delivers content directly to your desktop using a reader application. The RSS feeds are a free service.



CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Information

This chapter provides release-specific information for each new and changed feature in the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Security Guide, Release 6.x*.

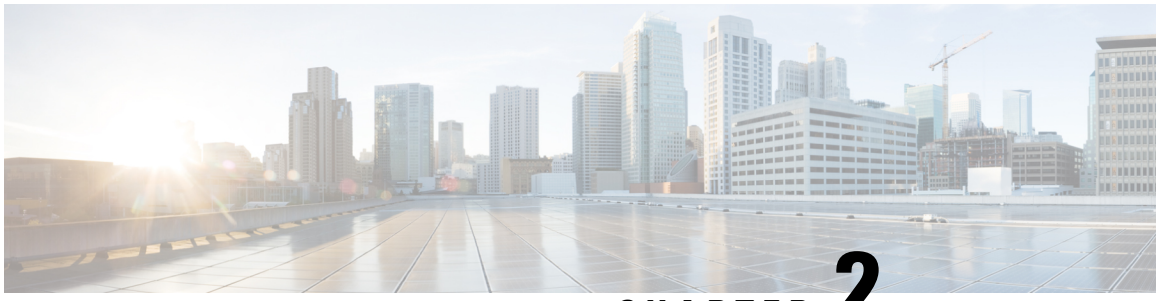
New and Changed Information

This table summarizes the new and changed features for the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Security Configuration Guide, Release 6.x* and tells you where they are documented.

Table 1: New and Changed Features for Cisco NX-OS Release 6.x

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
MAC packet classification	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I3(2)	Configuring MAC ACLs, on page 211
Policy-based ACLs (PBACLs)	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I3(2)	Configuring IP ACLs, on page 157
Rate limiters	Added support for FEX traffic.	6.1(2)I2(3)	Configuring Rate Limits, on page 307
Traffic storm control	Added support for traffic storm control counters, including the ability to generate an SNMP trap and a syslog message when the traffic storm control limit is reached.	6.1(2)I2(2a)	Configuring Traffic Storm Control, on page 267
CoPP	Added support for Layer 2 CoPP policies.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring Control Plane Policing, on page 273
DHCP	Added support for VLANs and vPCs.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring DHCP, on page 229

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
IP ACLs	Added support for VLAN interfaces and additional TCAM region options.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring IP ACLs, on page 157
MAC ACLs	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring MAC ACLs, on page 211
Port ACLs	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring IP ACLs, on page 157
Rate limiters	Added support for catch-all exception traffic, Layer 3 glean packets, and Layer 3 multicast data packets.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring Rate Limits, on page 307
Traffic storm control	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring Traffic Storm Control, on page 267
User roles	Added support for VLAN policies.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring User Accounts and RBAC, on page 137
VLAN ACLs	Introduced this feature.	6.1(2)I2(1)	Configuring VLAN ACLs, on page 221



CHAPTER 2

Overview

The Cisco NX-OS software supports security features that can protect your network against degradation or failure and also against data loss or compromise resulting from intentional attacks and from unintended but damaging mistakes by well-meaning network users.

This chapter includes the following sections:

Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting

Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) is an architectural framework for configuring a set of three independent security functions in a consistent, modular manner.

Authentication

Provides the method of identifying users, including login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and, depending on the security protocol that you select, encryption. Authentication is the way a user is identified prior to being allowed access to the network and network services. You configure AAA authentication by defining a named list of authentication methods and then applying that list to various interfaces.

Authorization
Provides the method for remote access control, including one-time authorization or authorization for each service, per-user account list and profile, user group support, and support of IP, IPX, ARA, and Telnet.

Remote security servers, such as RADIUS and TACACS+, authorize users for specific rights by associating attribute-value (AV) pairs, which define those rights, with the appropriate user. AAA authorization works by assembling a set of attributes that describe what the user is authorized to perform. These attributes are compared with the information contained in a database for a given user, and the result is returned to AAA to determine the user's actual capabilities and restrictions.

Accounting
Provides the method for collecting and sending security server information used for billing, auditing, and reporting, such as user identities, start and stop times, executed commands (such as PPP), number of packets, and number of bytes. Accounting enables you to track the services that users are accessing, as well as the amount of network resources that they are consuming.

Note You can configure authentication outside of AAA. However, you must configure AAA if you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+, or if you want to configure a backup authentication method.

Related Topics
Configuring AAA, on page 9

RADIUS and TACACS+ Security Protocols

AAA uses security protocols to administer its security functions. If your router or access server is acting as a network access server, AAA is the means through which you establish communication between your network access server and your RADIUS or TACACS+ security server.

The chapters in this guide describe how to configure the following security server protocols:

RADIUS
A distributed client/server system implemented through AAA that secures networks against unauthorized access. In the Cisco implementation, RADIUS clients run on Cisco routers and send authentication requests to a central RADIUS server that contains all user authentication and network service access information.

TACACS+
A security application implemented through AAA that provides a centralized validation of users who are attempting to gain access to a router or network access server. TACACS+ services are maintained in a database on a TACACS+ daemon running, typically, on a UNIX or Windows NT workstation. TACACS+ provides for separate and modular authentication, authorization, and accounting facilities.

Related Topics
Configuring RADIUS, on page 31
Configuring TACACS+, on page 57

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) provides centralized validation of users attempting to gain access to a Cisco NX-OS device. LDAP allows a single access control server (the LDAP daemon) to provide authentication and authorization independently.

Related Topics

Configuring LDAP, on page 93

SSH and Telnet

You can use the Secure Shell (SSH) server to enable an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco NX-OS device. SSH uses strong encryption for authentication. The SSH server in the Cisco NX-OS software can interoperate with publicly and commercially available SSH clients.

The SSH client in the Cisco NX-OS software works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers.

The Telnet protocol enables TCP/IP connections to a host. Telnet allows a user at one site to establish a TCP connection to a login server at another site and then passes the keystrokes from one device to the other. Telnet can accept either an IP address or a domain name as the remote device address.

Related Topics

Configuring SSH and Telnet, on page 115

User Accounts and Roles

You can create and manage user accounts and assign roles that limit access to operations on the Cisco NX-OS device. Role-based access control (RBAC) allows you to define the rules for an assign role that restrict the authorization that the user has to access management operations.

Related Topics

Configuring User Accounts and RBAC, on page 137

IP ACLs

IP ACLs are ordered sets of rules that you can use to filter traffic based on IPv4 information in the Layer 3 header of packets. Each rule specifies a set of conditions that a packet must satisfy to match the rule. When the Cisco NX-OS software determines that an IP ACL applies to a packet, it tests the packet against the conditions of all rules. The first match determines whether a packet is permitted or denied, or if there is no match, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the applicable default rule. The Cisco NX-OS software continues processing packets that are permitted and drops packets that are denied.

Related Topics

Configuring IP ACLs, on page 157

MAC ACLs

MAC ACLs are ACLs that filter traffic using the information in the Layer 2 header of each packet. Each rule specifies a set of conditions that a packet must satisfy to match the rule. When the Cisco NX-OS software determines that a MAC ACL applies to a packet, it tests the packet against the conditions of all rules. The first match determines whether a packet is permitted or denied, or if there is no match, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the applicable default rule. The Cisco NX-OS software continues processing packets that are permitted and drops packets that are denied.

Related Topics

Configuring MAC ACLs, on page 211

VACLs

A VLAN ACL (VACL) is one application of an IP ACL or MAC ACL. You can configure VACLs to apply to all packets that are routed into or out of a VLAN or are bridged within a VLAN. VACLs are strictly for security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VACLs are not defined by direction (ingress or egress).

Related Topics

Configuring VLAN ACLs, on page 221

DHCP Snooping

DHCP snooping acts like a firewall between untrusted hosts and trusted DHCP servers. DHCP snooping performs the following activities:

- Validates DHCP messages received from untrusted sources and filters out invalid messages.
- Builds and maintains the DHCP snooping binding database, which contains information about untrusted hosts with leased IP addresses.
- Uses the DHCP snooping binding database to validate subsequent requests from untrusted hosts.

Dynamic ARP inspection (DAI) and IP Source Guard (IPSG) also use information stored in the DHCP snooping binding database.

Dynamic ARP Inspection

Dynamic ARP inspection (DAI) ensures that only valid ARP requests and responses are relayed. When DAI is enabled and properly configured, a Cisco NX-OS device performs these activities:

- Intercepts all ARP requests and responses on untrusted ports.
- Verifies that each of these intercepted packets has a valid IP-to-MAC address binding before updating the local ARP cache or before forwarding the packet to the appropriate destination.
- Drops invalid ARP packets.

DAI can determine the validity of an ARP packet based on valid IP-to-MAC address bindings stored in a DHCP snooping binding database. This database can also contain static entries that you create. If the ARP packet is received on a trusted interface, the device forwards the packet without any checks. On untrusted interfaces, the device forwards the packet only if it is valid.

IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard is a per-interface traffic filter that permits IP traffic only when the IP address and MAC address of each packet matches one of two sources of IP and MAC address bindings:

- Entries in the DHCP snooping binding table.
- Static IP source entries that you configure.

Filtering on trusted IP and MAC address bindings helps prevent attacks that rely on spoofing the IP address of a valid host. To circumvent IP Source Guard, an attacker would have to spoof both the IP address and the MAC address of a valid host.

Password Encryption

The Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption feature stores all existing and newly created clear-text passwords for supported applications (currently RADIUS and TACACS+) in the strong and reversible type-6 encrypted format. A master encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt the passwords. You can also use this feature to convert all existing weakly encrypted passwords to type-6 encrypted passwords.

Related Topics

Configuring Password Encryption, on page 251

Keychain Management

Keychain management allows you to create and maintain keychains, which are sequences of keys (sometimes called shared secrets). You can use keychains with features that secure communications with other devices by using key-based authentication. The device allows you to configure multiple keychains.

Some routing protocols that support key-based authentication can use a keychain to implement a hitless key rollover for authentication.

Related Topics

Configuring Keychain Management, on page 257

Control Plane Policing

The Cisco NX-OS device provides control plane policing to prevent denial-of-service (DoS) attacks from impacting performance. The supervisor module of the Cisco NX-OS device has both the management plane and control plane and is critical to the operation of the network. Any disruption to the supervisor module would result in serious network outages. Excessive traffic to the supervisor module could overload it and slow down the performance of the entire Cisco NX-OS device. Attacks on the supervisor module can be of various

types such as, denial-of-service (DoS) attacks that generate IP traffic streams to the control plane at a very high rate. These attacks result in the control plane spending a large amount of time in handling these packets, which makes the control plane unable to process genuine traffic.

Related Topics

Configuring Control Plane Policing, on page 273

Rate Limits

Rate limits can prevent redirected packets for egress exceptions from overwhelming the supervisor module on a Cisco NX-OS device.

Related Topics

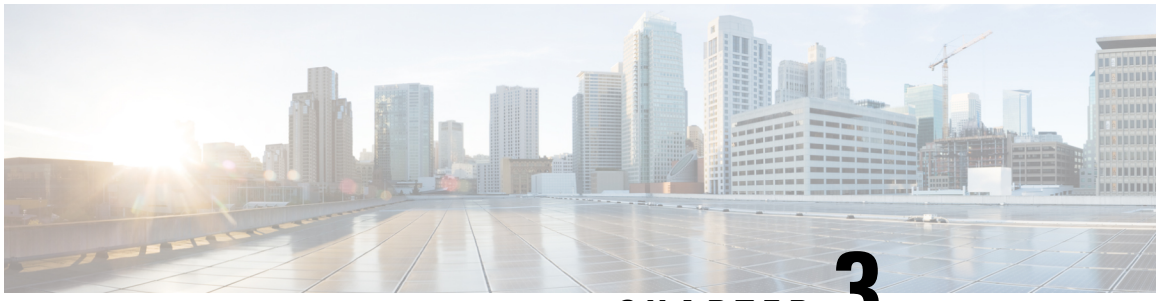
Configuring Rate Limits, on page 307

Software Image

The Cisco NX-OS software consists of one NXOS software image (for example, n9000-dk9.6.1.2.I1.1.bin). This image runs on all Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches.

Virtual Device Contexts

Cisco NX-OS can segment operating system and hardware resources into virtual device contexts (VDCs) that emulate virtual devices. The Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches currently do not support multiple VDCs. All switch resources are managed in the default VDC.



CHAPTER 3

Configuring AAA

This chapter describes how to configure authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About AAA

This section includes information about AAA on Cisco NX-OS devices.

AAA Security Services

The AAA feature allows you to verify the identity of, grant access to, and track the actions of users managing a Cisco NX-OS device. Cisco NX-OS devices support Remote Access Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) or Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) protocols.

Based on the user ID and password combination that you provide, Cisco NX-OS devices perform local authentication or authorization using the local database or remote authentication or authorization using one or more AAA servers. A preshared secret key provides security for communication between the Cisco NX-OS device and AAA servers. You can configure a common secret key for all AAA servers or for only a specific AAA server.

AAA security provides the following services:

Authentication
: Identifies users, including login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support, and, depending on the security protocol that you select, encryption.

Authentication is the process of verifying the identity of the person or device accessing the Cisco NX-OS device, which is based on the user ID and password combination provided by the entity trying to access the Cisco NX-OS device. Cisco NX-OS devices allow you to perform local authentication (using the local lookup database) or remote authentication (using one or more RADIUS or TACACS+ servers).

Authorization

Provides access control.AAA authorization is the process of assembling a set of attributes that describe what the user is authorized to perform. Authorization in the Cisco NX-OS software is provided by attributes that are downloaded from AAA servers. Remote security servers, such as RADIUS and TACACS+, authorize users for specific rights by associating attribute-value (AV) pairs, which define those rights with the appropriate user.

Accounting

Provides the method for collecting information, logging the information locally, and sending the information to the AAA server for billing, auditing, and reporting.

The accounting feature tracks and maintains a log of every management session used to access the Cisco NX-OS device. You can use this information to generate reports for troubleshooting and auditing purposes. You can store accounting logs locally or send them to remote AAA servers.

Note The Cisco NX-OS software supports authentication, authorization, and accounting independently. For example, you can configure authentication and authorization without configuring accounting.

Benefits of Using AAA

AAA provides the following benefits:

- Increased flexibility and control of access configuration
- Scalability
- Standardized authentication methods, such as RADIUS and TACACS+
- Multiple backup devices

Remote AAA Services

Remote AAA services provided through RADIUS and TACACS+ protocols have the following advantages over local AAA services:

- It is easier to manage user password lists for each Cisco NX-OS device in the fabric.
- AAA servers are already deployed widely across enterprises and can be easily used for AAA services.
- You can centrally manage the accounting log for all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.
- It is easier to manage user attributes for each Cisco NX-OS device in the fabric than using the local databases on the Cisco NX-OS devices.

AAA Server Groups

You can specify remote AAA servers for authentication, authorization, and accounting using server groups. A server group is a set of remote AAA servers that implements the same AAA protocol. The purpose of a server group is to provide for failover servers in case a remote AAA server fails to respond. If the first remote server in the group fails to respond, the next remote server in the group is tried until one of the servers sends a response. If all the AAA servers in the server group fail to respond, then that server group option is considered a failure. If required, you can specify multiple server groups. If the Cisco NX-OS device encounters errors from the servers in the first group, it tries the servers in the next server group.

AAA Service Configuration Options

The AAA configuration in Cisco NX-OS devices is service based, which means that you can have separate AAA configurations for the following services:

- User Telnet or Secure Shell (SSH) login authentication
- Console login authentication
- User management session accounting

This table provides the related CLI command for each AAA service configuration option.

Table 2: AAA Service Configuration Commands

AAA Service Configuration Option	Related Command
Telnet or SSH login	**aaa authentication login default**
Console login	**aaa authentication login console**
User session accounting	**aaa accounting default**

You can specify the following authentication methods for the AAA services:

All RADIUS servers

Uses the global pool of RADIUS servers for authentication.

Specified server groups

Uses specified RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP server groups you have configured for authentication.

Local

Uses the local username or password database for authentication.

None

Specifies that no AAA authentication be used.

Note If you specify the all RADIUS servers method, rather than a specified server group method, the Cisco NX-OS device chooses the RADIUS server from the global pool of configured RADIUS servers, in the order of configuration. Servers from this global pool are the servers that can be selectively configured in a RADIUS server group on the Cisco NX-OS device.

This table shows the AAA authentication methods that you can configure for the AAA services.

Table 3: AAA Authentication Methods for AAA Services

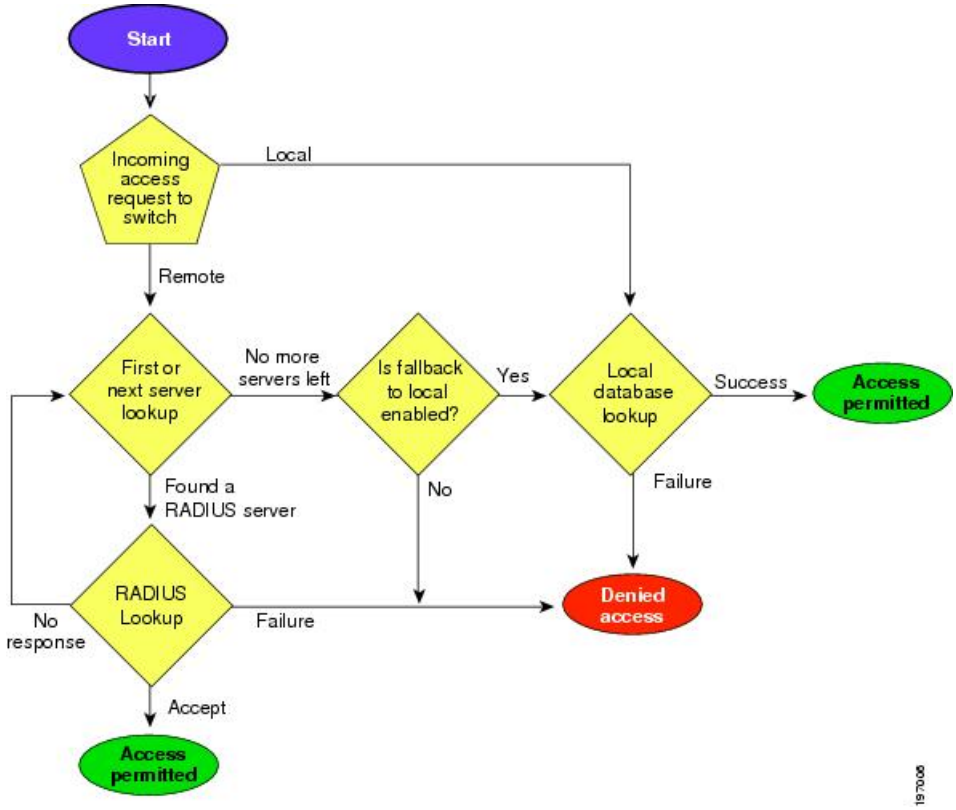
AAA Service	AAA Methods
Console login authentication	Server groups, local, and none
User login authentication	Server groups, local, and none
User management session accounting	Server groups and local

Note For console login authentication, user login authentication, and user management session accounting, the Cisco NX-OS device tries each option in the order specified. The local option is the default method when other configured options fail. You can disable the local option for the console or default login by using the **no aaa authentication login** { **console** | **default** } **fallback error local** command.

Authentication and Authorization Process for User Login

Figure 1: Authorization and Authentication Flow for User Login

This figure shows a flow chart of the authentication and authorization process for user login.



The following list explains the process:

- When you log in to the required Cisco NX-OS device, you can use the Telnet, SSH, or console login options.
- When you have configured the AAA server groups using the server group authentication method, the Cisco NX-OS device sends an authentication request to the first AAA server in the group as follows:
  - If the AAA server fails to respond, the next AAA server is tried and so on until the remote server responds to the authentication request.
  - If all AAA servers in the server group fail to respond, the servers in the next server group are tried.
  - If all configured methods fail, the local database is used for authentication, unless fallback to local is disabled for the console login.
- If the Cisco NX-OS device successfully authenticates you through a remote AAA server, then the following possibilities apply:
  - If the AAA server protocol is RADIUS, then user roles specified in the cisco-av-pair attribute are downloaded with an authentication response.
  - If the AAA server protocol is TACACS+, then another request is sent to the same server to get the user roles specified as custom attributes for the shell.
- If your username and password are successfully authenticated locally, the Cisco NX-OS device logs you in and assigns you the roles configured in the local database.

Note "No more server groups left" means that there is no response from any server in all server groups. "No more servers left" means that there is no response from any server within this server group.

AES Password Encryption and Master Encryption Keys

You can enable strong, reversible 128-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption, also known as type-6 encryption. To start using type-6 encryption, you must enable the AES password encryption feature and configure a master encryption key, which is used to encrypt and decrypt passwords.

After you enable AES password encryption and configure a master key, all existing and newly created clear-text passwords for supported applications (currently RADIUS and TACACS+) are stored in type-6 encrypted format, unless you disable type-6 password encryption. You can also configure Cisco NX-OS to convert all existing weakly encrypted passwords to type-6 encrypted passwords.

Licensing Requirements for AAA

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	AAA requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

Prerequisites for AAA

Remote AAA servers have the following prerequisites:

- Ensure that at least one RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP server is reachable through IP.
- Ensure that the Cisco NX-OS device is configured as a client of the AAA servers.
- Ensure that the secret key is configured on the Cisco NX-OS device and the remote AAA servers.
- Ensure that the remote server responds to AAA requests from the Cisco NX-OS device.

Guidelines and Limitations for AAA

AAA has the following guidelines and limitations:

- If you have a user account configured on the local Cisco NX-OS device that has the same name as a remote user account on an AAA server, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the user roles for the local user account to the remote user, not the user roles configured on the AAA server.
- Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches support the **aaa authentication login ascii-authentication** command only for TACACS+ (and not for RADIUS).
- If you modify the default login authentication method (without using the **local** keyword), the configuration overrides the console login authentication method. To explicitly configure the console authentication method, use the **aaa authentication login console** {**group** *group-list* [**none**] | **local** | **none**} command.

Default Settings for AAA

This table lists the default settings for AAA parameters.

Table 4: Default AAA Parameter Settings

Parameters	Default
Console authentication method	local
Default authentication method	local
Login authentication failure messages	Disabled
CHAP authentication	Disabled
MSCHAP authentication	Disabled
Default accounting method	local
Accounting log display length	250 KB

Configuring AAA

This section describes the tasks for configuring AAA on Cisco NX-OS devices.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Note Cisco Nexus 9K Series switches support the CLI command, aaa authentication login ascii-authentication, only for TACAAS+, but not for RADIUS. Ensure that you have disabled aaa authentication login ascii-authentication switch so that the default authentication, PAP, is enabled. Otherwise, you will see syslog errors.

Process for Configuring AAA

Follow these steps to configure AAA authentication and accounting:

1. If you want to use remote RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP servers for authentication, configure the hosts on your Cisco NX-OS device.
2. Configure console login authentication methods.
3. Configure default login authentication methods for user logins.
4. Configure default AAA accounting default methods.

Configuring Console Login Authentication Methods

This section describes how to configure the authentication methods for the console login.

The authentication methods include the following:

- Global pool of RADIUS servers
- Named subset of RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP servers
- Local database on the Cisco NX-OS device
- Username only (none)

The default method is local, but you have the option to disable it.

Note The **group radius** and **group** *server-name* forms of the **aaa authentication** command refer to a set of previously defined RADIUS servers. Use the **radius-server host** command to configure the host servers. Use the **aaa group server radius** command to create a named group of servers.

Note If you perform a password recovery when remote authentication is enabled, local authentication becomes enabled for console login as soon as the password recovery is done. As a result, you can log into the Cisco NX-OS device through the console port using the new password. After login, you can continue to use local authentication, or you can enable remote authentication after resetting the admin password configured at the AAA servers. For more information about the password recovery process, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Troubleshooting Guide.*

Before you begin

Configure RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP server groups, as needed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authentication login console** {**group** *group-list* [**none**] | **local** | **none**}
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa authentication**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authentication login console** {**group** *group-list* [**none**]	**local**	**none**} **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login console group radius`	Configures login authentication methods for the console. The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of group names. The group names are the following: **radius** Uses the global pool of RADIUS servers for authentication. ***named-group*** Uses a named subset of RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP servers for authentication. The **local** method uses the local database for authentication, and the **none** method specifies that no AAA authentication be used. The default console login method is **local** , which is used when no methods are configured or when all the configured methods fail to respond, unless fallback to local is disabled for the console login.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa authentication** **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication`	Displays the configuration of the console login authentication methods.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring Default Login Authentication Methods

The authentication methods include the following:

- Global pool of RADIUS servers
- Named subset of RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP servers
- Local database on the Cisco NX-OS device
- Username only

The default method is local, but you have the option to disable it.

Before you begin

Configure RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP server groups, as needed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authentication login default** {**group** *group-list* [**none**] | **local** | **none**}
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa authentication**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	**aaa authentication login default** {**group** *group-list* [**none**] | **local** | **none**} **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login default group radius`	Configures the default authentication methods. The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of group names. The group names are the following: • **radius** —Uses the global pool of RADIUS servers for authentication. • *named-group*—Uses a named subset of RADIUS, TACACS+, or LDAP servers for authentication. The **local** method uses the local database for authentication, and the **none** method specifies that no AAA authentication be used. The default login method is **local** , which is used when no methods are configured or when all the configured methods fail to respond, unless fallback to local is disabled for the console login. You can configure one of the following: • AAA authentication groups • AAA authentication groups with no authentication • Local authentication • No authentication **Note** The **local** keyword is not supported (and is not required) when configuring AAA authentication groups because local authentication is the default if remote servers are unreachable. For example, if you configure **aaa authentication login default group g1** , local authentication is tried if you are unable to authenticate using AAA group g1. In contrast, if you configure **aaa authentication login default group g1 none** , no authentication is performed if you are unable to authenticate using AAA group g1.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa authentication** **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication`	Displays the configuration of the default login authentication methods.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# copy running-config startup-config`	

Disabling Fallback to Local Authentication

By default, if remote authentication is configured for console or default login and all AAA servers are unreachable (resulting in an authentication error), the Cisco NX-OS device falls back to local authentication to ensure that users are not locked out of the device. However, you can disable fallback to local authentication in order to increase security.

Caution Disabling fallback to local authentication can lock your Cisco NX-OS device, forcing you to perform a password recovery in order to gain access. To prevent being locked out of the device, we recommend that you disable fallback to local authentication for only the default login or the console login, not both.

Before you begin

Configure remote authentication for the console or default login.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no aaa authentication login** {**console** | **default**} **fallback error local**
3. (Optional) **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa authentication**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**no aaa authentication login** {**console**	**default**} **fallback error local** **Example:** `switch(config)# no aaa authentication login console fallback error local`	Disables fallback to local authentication for the console or default login if remote authentication is configured and all AAA servers are unreachable. The following message appears when you disable fallback to local authentication: "WARNING!!! Disabling fallback can lock your switch."
Step 3	(Optional) **exit** **Example:**	Exits configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# exit` `switch#`	
Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa authentication** **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication`	Displays the configuration of the console and default login authentication methods.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling the Default User Role for AAA Authentication

You can allow remote users who do not have a user role to log in to the Cisco NX-OS device through a RADIUS or TACACS+ remote authentication server using a default user role. When you disable the AAA default user role feature, remote users who do not have a user role cannot log in to the device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa user default-role**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa user default-role**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa user default-role** **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa user default-role`	Enables the default user role for AAA authentication. The default is enabled. You can disable the default user role feature by using the **no** form of this command.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa user default-role** **Example:** `switch# show aaa user default-role`	Displays the AAA default user role configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling Login Authentication Failure Messages

When you log in, the login is processed by rolling over to the local user database if the remote AAA servers do not respond. In such cases, the following messages display on the user's terminal if you have enabled login failure messages:

```
Remote AAA servers unreachable; local authentication done.
```

```
Remote AAA servers unreachable; local authentication failed.
```

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authentication login error-enable**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa authentication**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authentication login error-enable** **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login error-enable`	Enables login authentication failure messages. The default is disabled.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa authentication** **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication`	Displays the login failure message configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# copy running-config startup-config`	

Enabling CHAP Authentication

The Cisco NX-OS software supports the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), a challenge-response authentication protocol that uses the industry-standard Message Digest (MD5) hashing scheme to encrypt responses. You can use CHAP for user logins to a Cisco NX-OS device through a remote authentication server (RADIUS or TACACS+).

By default, the Cisco NX-OS device uses Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) authentication between the Cisco NX-OS device and the remote server. If you enable CHAP, you need to configure your RADIUS or TACACS+ server to recognize the CHAP vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

Note Cisco Nexus 9K Series switches support the CLI command, aaa authentication login ascii-authentication, only for TACAAS+, but not for RADIUS. Ensure that you have disabled aaa authentication login ascii-authentication switch so that the default authentication, PAP, is enabled. Otherwise, you will see syslog errors. For example:

```
2017 Jun 14 16:14:15 N9K-1 %RADIUS-2-RADIUS_NO_AUTHEN_INFO: ASCII authentication not supported
2017 Jun 14 16:14:16 N9K-1 %AUTHPRIV-3-SYSTEM_MSG: pam_aaa:Authentication failed from
192.168.12.34 - dcos_sshd[16804]
```

This table shows the RADIUS and TACACS+ VSAs required for CHAP.

Table 5: CHAP RADIUS and TACACS+ VSAs

Vendor-ID Number	Vendor-Type Number	VSA	Description
311	11	CHAP-Challenge	Contains the challenge sent by an AAA server to a CHAP user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets.
211	11	CHAP-Response	Contains the response value provided by a CHAP user in response to the challenge. It is used only in Access-Request packets.

Before you begin

Disable AAA ASCII authentication for logins.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication**
3. **aaa authentication login chap enable**
4. (Optional) **exit**
5. (Optional) **show aaa authentication login chap**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication** **Example:** `switch(config)# no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication`	Disables ASCII authentication.
Step 3	**aaa authentication login chap enable** **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login chap enable`	Enables CHAP authentication. The default is disabled. **Note** You cannot enable both CHAP and MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 on your Cisco NX-OS device.

Step 4	(Optional) **exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show aaa authentication login chap** **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication login chap`	Displays the CHAP configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 Authentication

Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MSCHAP) is the Microsoft version of CHAP. The Cisco NX-OS software also supports MSCHAP Version 2 (MSCHAP V2). You can use MSCHAP for user logins to a Cisco NX-OS device through a remote authentication server (RADIUS or TACACS+). MSCHAP V2 only supports user logins to a Cisco NX-OS device through remote authentication RADIUS servers. If you configure a TACACS+ group with MSCHAP V2, the AAA default login authentication uses the next configured method, or the local method, if no other server group is configured.

Note The Cisco NX-OS software may display the following message:

" Warning: MSCHAP V2 is supported only with Radius."

This warning message is informational only and does not affect MSCHAP V2 operation with RADIUS.

By default, the Cisco NX-OS device uses Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) authentication between the Cisco NX-OS device and the remote server. If you enable MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2, you need to configure your RADIUS server to recognize the MSCHAP and MSCHAP V2 vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

This table shows the RADIUS VSAs required for MSCHAP.

Table 6: MSCHAP and MSCHAP V2 RADIUS VSAs

Vendor-ID Number	Vendor-Type Number	VSA	Description
311	11	MSCHAP-Challenge	Contains the challenge sent by an AAA server to an MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 user. It can be used in both Access-Request and Access-Challenge packets.
211	11	MSCHAP-Response	Contains the response value provided by an MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 user in response to the challenge. It is only used in Access-Request packets.

Before you begin

Disable AAA ASCII authentication for logins.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication**
3. **aaa authentication login** {**mschap** | **mschapv2**} **enable**
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show aaa authentication login** {**mschap** | **mschapv2**}
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication** **Example:** `switch(config)# no aaa authentication login ascii-authentication`	Disables ASCII authentication.
Step 3	**aaa authentication login** {**mschap**	**mschapv2**} **enable** **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login mschap enable`	Enables MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 authentication. The default is disabled. **Note** You cannot enable both MSCHAP and MSCHAP V2 on your Cisco NX-OS device.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show aaa authentication login** {**mschap** | **mschapv2**} **Example:** `switch# show aaa authentication login mschap`	Displays the MSCHAP or MSCHAP V2 configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring AAA Accounting Default Methods

Cisco NX-OS software supports TACACS+ and RADIUS methods for accounting. Cisco NX-OS devices report user activity to TACACS+ or RADIUS security servers in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting attribute-value (AV) pairs and is stored on the AAA server.

When you activate AAA accounting, the Cisco NX-OS device reports these attributes as accounting records, which are then stored in an accounting log on the security server.

You can create default method lists defining specific accounting methods, which include the following:

RADIUS server group
Uses the global pool of RADIUS servers for accounting.

Specified server group
Uses a specified RADIUS or TACACS+ server group for accounting.

Local
Uses the local username or password database for accounting.

Note If you have configured server groups and the server groups do not respond, by default, the local database is used for authentication.

Before you begin

Configure RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups, as needed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa accounting default** {**group** *group-list* | **local**}
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa accounting**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa accounting default** {**group** *group-list* | **local**} **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa accounting default group radius`	Configures the default accounting method. The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of group names. The group names are the following: • **radius** —Uses the global pool of RADIUS servers for accounting. • *named-group*—Uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for accounting. The **local** method uses the local database for accounting. The default method is **local** , which is used when no server groups are configured or when all the configured server groups fail to respond.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa accounting** **Example:** `switch# show aaa accounting`	Displays the configuration AAA accounting default methods.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Using AAA Server VSAs with Cisco NX-OS Devices

You can use vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) to specify Cisco NX-OS user roles and SNMPv3 parameters on AAA servers.

About VSAs

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating VSAs between the network access server and the RADIUS server. The IETF uses attribute 26. VSAs allow vendors to support their own extended attributes that are not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option using the format recommended in the specification. The Cisco vendor

ID is 9, and the supported option is vendor type 1, which is named cisco-av-pair. The value is a string with the following format:

```
protocol : attribute separator value *
```

The protocol is a Cisco attribute for a particular type of authorization, the separator is = (equal sign) for mandatory attributes, and * (asterisk) indicates optional attributes.

When you use RADIUS servers for authentication on a Cisco NX-OS device, the RADIUS protocol directs the RADIUS server to return user attributes, such as authorization information, along with authentication results. This authorization information is specified through VSAs.

VSA Format

The following VSA protocol options are supported by the Cisco NX-OS software:

Shell
Protocol used in access-accept packets to provide user profile information.

Accounting
Protocol used in accounting-request packets. If a value contains any white spaces, put it within double quotation marks.

The following attributes are supported by the Cisco NX-OS software:

roles

Lists all the roles assigned to the user. The value field is a string that stores the list of group names delimited by white space. For example, if you belong to role network-operator and network-admin, the value field would be network-operator network-admin. This subattribute is sent in the VSA portion of the Access-Accept frames from the RADIUS server, and it can only be used with the shell protocol value. These examples use the roles attribute:

```
shell:roles=network-operator network-admin
```

```
shell:roles*network-operator network-admin
```

The following examples show the roles attribute as supported by FreeRADIUS:

```
Cisco-AVPair = shell:roles=\network-operator network-admin\
```

```
Cisco-AVPair = shell:roles*\network-operator network-admin\
```

Note When you specify a VSA as shell:roles*"network-operator network-admin" or "shell:roles*\"network-operator network-admin\"", this VSA is flagged as an optional attribute and other Cisco devices ignore this attribute.

accountinginfo
Stores accounting information in addition to the attributes covered by a standard RADIUS accounting protocol. This attribute is sent only in the VSA portion of the Account-Request frames from the RADIUS client on the switch, and it can only be used with the accounting protocol-related PDUs.

Specifying Cisco NX-OS User Roles and SNMPv3 Parameters on AAA Servers

You can use the VSA cisco-av-pair on AAA servers to specify user role mapping for the Cisco NX-OS device using this format:

```
shell:roles="roleA roleB …"
```

If you do not specify the role option in the cisco-av-pair attribute, the default user role is network-operator.

You can also specify your SNMPv3 authentication and privacy protocol attributes as follows:

```
shell:roles="roleA roleB..." snmpv3:auth=SHA priv=AES-128
```

The SNMPv3 authentication protocol options are SHA and MD5. The privacy protocol options are AES-128 and DES. If you do not specify these options in the cisco-av-pair attribute, MD5 and DES are the default authentication protocols.

Monitoring and Clearing the Local AAA Accounting Log

The Cisco NX-OS device maintains a local log for the AAA accounting activity. You can monitor this log and clear it.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show accounting log** [*size* | **last-index** | **start-seqnum** *number* | **start-time** *year month day hh* **:** *mm* **:** *ss*]
2. (Optional) **clear accounting log** [**logflash**]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show accounting log** [*size* | **last-index** | **start-seqnum** *number* | **start-time** *year month day hh* **:** *mm* **:** *ss*] **Example:** `switch# show accounting log`	Displays the accounting log contents. By default, the command output contains up to 250,000 bytes of the accounting log. You can use the *size* argument to limit command output. The range is from 0 to 250000 bytes. You can also specify a starting sequence number or a starting time for the log output.The range of the starting index is from 1 to 1000000. Use the **last-index** keyword to display the value of the last index number in the accounting log file.
Step 2	(Optional) **clear accounting log** [**logflash**] **Example:** `switch# clear aaa accounting log`	Clears the accounting log contents. The **logflash** keyword clears the accounting log stored in the logflash.

Verifying the AAA Configuration

To display AAA configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show aaa accounting	Displays AAA accounting configuration.
show aaa authentication [**login** {**ascii-authentication** | **chap** | **error-enable** | **mschap** | **mschapv2**}]	Displays AAA authentication login configuration information.
show aaa groups	Displays the AAA server group configuration.
show running-config aaa [**all**]	Displays the AAA configuration in the running configuration.
show startup-config aaa	Displays the AAA configuration in the startup configuration.

Configuration Examples for AAA

The following example shows how to configure AAA:

```
aaa authentication login default group radius
aaa authentication login console group radius
aaa accounting default group radius
```

Additional References for AAA

This section includes additional information related to implementing AAA.

Related Documents

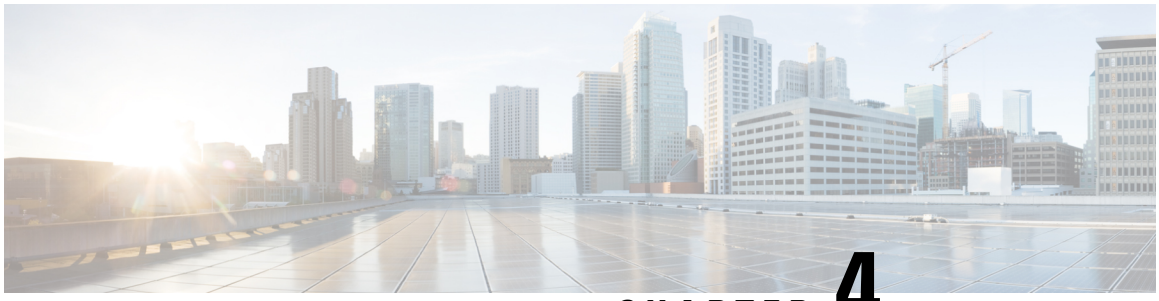
Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS Licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to AAA	To locate and download supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 4

Configuring RADIUS

This chapter describes how to configure the Remote Access Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) protocol on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About RADIUS

The RADIUS distributed client/server system allows you to secure networks against unauthorized access. In the Cisco implementation, RADIUS clients run on Cisco NX-OS devices and send authentication and accounting requests to a central RADIUS server that contains all user authentication and network service access information.

RADIUS Network Environments

RADIUS can be implemented in a variety of network environments that require high levels of security while maintaining network access for remote users.

You can use RADIUS in the following network environments that require access security:

- Networks with multiple-vendor network devices, each supporting RADIUS. For example, network devices from several vendors can use a single RADIUS server-based security database.
- Networks already using RADIUS. You can add a Cisco NX-OS device with RADIUS to the network. This action might be the first step when you make a transition to a AAA server.

- Networks that require resource accounting. You can use RADIUS accounting independent of RADIUS authentication or authorization. The RADIUS accounting functions allow data to be sent at the start and end of services, indicating the amount of resources (such as time, packets, bytes, and so on) used during the session. An Internet service provider (ISP) might use a freeware-based version of the RADIUS access control and accounting software to meet special security and billing needs.
- Networks that support authentication profiles. Using the RADIUS server in your network, you can configure AAA authentication and set up per-user profiles. Per-user profiles enable the Cisco NX-OS device to better manage ports using their existing RADIUS solutions and to efficiently manage shared resources to offer different service-level agreements.

RADIUS Operation

When a user attempts to log in and authenticate to a Cisco NX-OS device using RADIUS, the following process occurs:

- The user is prompted for and enters a username and password.
- The username and encrypted password are sent over the network to the RADIUS server.
- The user receives one of the following responses from the RADIUS server:

  ACCEPT
  The user is authenticated.
  REJECT
  The user is not authenticated and is prompted to reenter the username and password, or access is denied.
  CHALLENGE
  A challenge is issued by the RADIUS server. The challenge collects additional data from the user.
  CHANGE PASSWORD
  A request is issued by the RADIUS server, asking the user to select a new password.

The ACCEPT or REJECT response is bundled with additional data that is used for EXEC or network authorization. You must first complete RADIUS authentication before using RADIUS authorization. The additional data included with the ACCEPT or REJECT packets consists of the following:

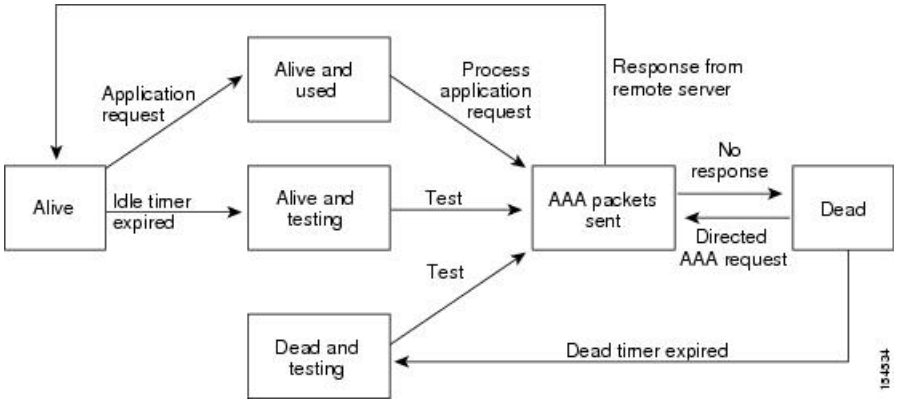
- Services that the user can access, including Telnet, rlogin, or local-area transport (LAT) connections, and Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP), or EXEC services.
- Connection parameters, including the host or client IPv4 or IPv6 address, access list, and user timeouts.

RADIUS Server Monitoring

An unresponsive RADIUS server can cause a delay in processing AAA requests. You can configure the Cisco NX-OS device to periodically monitor a RADIUS server to check whether it is responding (or alive) to save time in processing AAA requests. The Cisco NX-OS device marks unresponsive RADIUS servers as dead and does not send AAA requests to any dead RADIUS servers. The Cisco NX-OS device periodically monitors the dead RADIUS servers and brings them to the alive state once they respond. This monitoring process verifies that a RADIUS server is in a working state before real AAA requests are sent its way. Whenever a RADIUS server changes to the dead or alive state, a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) trap is generated and the Cisco NX-OS device displays an error message that a failure is taking place.

Figure 2: RADIUS Server States

This figure shows the states for RADIUS server monitoring.



Note The monitoring interval for alive servers and dead servers are different and can be configured by the user. The RADIUS server monitoring is performed by sending a test authentication request to the RADIUS server.

Vendor-Specific Attributes

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating VSAs between the network access server and the RADIUS server. The IETF uses attribute 26. VSAs allow vendors to support their own extended attributes that are not suitable for general use. The Cisco RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option using the format recommended in the specification. The Cisco vendor ID is 9, and the supported option is vendor type 1, which is named cisco-av-pair. The value is a string with the following format:

```
protocol : attribute separator value *
```

The protocol is a Cisco attribute for a particular type of authorization, the separator is = (equal sign) for mandatory attributes, and * (asterisk) indicates optional attributes.

When you use RADIUS servers for authentication on a Cisco NX-OS device, the RADIUS protocol directs the RADIUS server to return user attributes, such as authorization information, with authentication results. This authorization information is specified through VSAs.

The following VSA protocol options are supported by the Cisco NX-OS software:

Shell
Protocol used in access-accept packets to provide user profile information.

Accounting
Protocol used in accounting-request packets. If a value contains any white spaces, you should enclose the value within double quotation marks.

The Cisco NX-OS software supports the following attributes:

roles
Lists all the roles to which the user belongs. The value field is a string that lists the role names delimited by white space. For example, if the user belongs to roles network-operator and network-admin, the value field would be network-operator network-admin. This subattribute, which the RADIUS server sends in

the VSA portion of the Access-Accept frames, can only be used with the shell protocol value. The following examples show the roles attribute that is supported by the Cisco Access Control Server (ACS):

```
shell:roles=network-operator network-admin

shell:roles*"network-operator network-admin
```

The following examples show the roles attribute that is supported by FreeRADIUS:

```
Cisco-AVPair = shell:roles=\network-operator network-admin\

Cisco-AVPair = shell:roles*\network-operator network-admin\
```

Note When you specify a VSA as shell:roles*"network-operator network-admin" or "shell:roles*\"network-operator network-admin\"", this VSA is flagged as an optional attribute and other Cisco devices ignore this attribute.

accountinginfo
Stores accounting information in addition to the attributes covered by a standard RADIUS accounting protocol. This attribute is sent only in the VSA portion of the Account-Request frames from the RADIUS client on the switch. It can be used only with the accounting protocol data units (PDUs).

Licensing Requirements for RADIUS

This table shows the licensing requirements for this feature.

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	RADIUS requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for RADIUS

RADIUS has the following prerequisites:

- Obtain IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or hostnames for the RADIUS servers.
- Obtain keys from the RADIUS servers.
- Ensure that the Cisco NX-OS device is configured as a RADIUS client of the AAA servers.

Guidelines and Limitations for RADIUS

RADIUS has the following guidelines and limitations:

- You can configure a maximum of 64 RADIUS servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.
- If you have a user account configured on the local Cisco NX-OS device that has the same name as a remote user account on an AAA server, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the user roles for the local user account to the remote user, not the user roles configured on the AAA server.
- Only the RADIUS protocol supports one-time passwords.
- Cisco Nexus 9K Series switches support the CLI command, aaa authentication login ascii-authentication, only for TACAAS+, but not for RADIUS. Ensure that you have disabled aaa authentication login ascii-authentication switch so that the default authentication, PAP, is enabled. Otherwise, you will see syslog errors.

Default Settings for RADIUS

This table lists the default settings for RADIUS parameters.

Table 7: Default RADIUS Parameter Settings

Parameters	Default
Server roles	Authentication and accounting
Dead timer interval	0 minutes
Retransmission count	1
Retransmission timer interval	5 seconds
Authentication port	1812
Accounting port	1813
Idle timer interval	0 minutes
Periodic server monitoring username	test
Periodic server monitoring password	test

Configuring RADIUS Servers

This section describes how to configure RADIUS servers on a Cisco NX-OS device.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Note Cisco Nexus 9K Series switches support the CLI command, aaa authentication login ascii-authentication, only for TACAAS+, but not for RADIUS. Ensure that you have disabled aaa authentication login ascii-authentication switch so that the default authentication, PAP, is enabled. Otherwise, you will see syslog errors.

RADIUS Server Configuration Process

1. Establish the RADIUS server connections to the Cisco NX-OS device.
2. Configure the RADIUS secret keys for the RADIUS servers.
3. If needed, configure RADIUS server groups with subsets of the RADIUS servers for AAA authentication methods.
4. If needed, configure any of the following optional parameters:
   - Dead-time interval
   - RADIUS server specification allowed at user login
   - Timeout interval
   - TCP port
5. (Optional) If RADIUS distribution is enabled, commit the RADIUS configuration to the fabric.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36
Configuring Global RADIUS Keys, on page 38

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts

To access a remote RADIUS server, you must configure the IP address or hostname of a RADIUS server. You can configure up to 64 RADIUS servers.

Note By default, when you configure a RADIUS server IP address or hostname of the Cisco NX-OS device, the RADIUS server is added to the default RADIUS server group. You can also add the RADIUS server to another RADIUS server group.

Before you begin

Ensure that the server is already configured as a member of the server group.

Ensure that the server is configured to authenticate RADIUS traffic.

Ensure that the Cisco NX-OS device is configured as a RADIUS client of the AAA servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**

2. **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*}
3. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **radius commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show radius-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.1.1`	Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address or hostname for a RADIUS server to use for authentication.
Step 3	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring a Key for a Specific RADIUS Server, on page 39

Configuring Global RADIUS Keys

You can configure RADIUS keys for all servers used by the Cisco NX-OS device. A RADIUS key is a shared secret text string between the Cisco NX-OS device and the RADIUS server hosts.

Before you begin

Obtain the RADIUS key values for the remote RADIUS servers.

Configure the RADIUS key on the remote RADIUS servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show radius-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server key 0 QsEfThUkO`	Specifies a RADIUS key for all RADIUS servers. You can specify that the *key-value* is in clear text format (**0**), is type-6 encrypted (**6**), or is type-7 encrypted (**7**). The Cisco NX-OS software encrypts a clear text key before saving it to the running configuration. The default format is clear text. The maximum length is 63 characters. By default, no RADIUS key is configured.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration. **Note** The RADIUS keys are saved in encrypted form in the running configuration. Use the **show running-config** command to display the encrypted RADIUS keys.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Groups, on page 40

Configuring a Key for a Specific RADIUS Server

You can configure a key on the Cisco NX-OS device for a specific RADIUS server. A RADIUS key is a secret text string shared between the Cisco NX-OS device and a specific RADIUS server.

Before you begin

Configure one or more RADIUS server hosts.

Obtain the key value for the remote RADIUS server.

Configure the key on the RADIUS server.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show radius-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.1.1 key 0 PlIjUhYg`	Specifies a RADIUS key for a specific RADIUS server. You can specify that the *key-value* is in clear text format (**0**), is type-6 encrypted (**6**), or is type-7 encrypted (**7**). The Cisco NX-OS software encrypts a clear text key before saving it to the running configuration. The default format is clear text. The maximum length is 63 characters. This RADIUS key is used instead of the global RADIUS key.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:**	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# show radius-server`	**Note** The RADIUS keys are saved in encrypted form in the running configuration. Use the **show running-config** command to display the encrypted RADIUS keys.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36

Configuring RADIUS Server Groups

You can specify one or more remote AAA servers for authentication using server groups. All members of a group must belong to the RADIUS protocol. The servers are tried in the same order in which you configure them.

You can configure these server groups at any time but they only take effect when you apply them to an AAA service.

Before you begin

Ensure that all servers in the group are RADIUS servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa group server radius** *group-name*
3. **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*}
4. (Optional) **deadtime** *minutes*
5. (Optional) **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*}
6. (Optional) **use-vrf** *vrf-name*
7. **exit**
8. (Optional) **show radius-server groups** [*group-name*]
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 2	**aaa group server radius** *group-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# aaa group server radius RadServer`
	`switch(config-radius)#`
		Creates a RADIUS server group and enters the RADIUS server group configuration submode for that group. The *group-name* argument is a case-sensitive alphanumeric string with a maximum length of 127 characters.

Step 3	**server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **Example:** `switch(config-radius)# server 10.10.1.1`	Configures the RADIUS server as a member of the RADIUS server group. If the specified RADIUS server is not found, configure it using the **radius-server host** command and retry this command.
Step 4	(Optional) **deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config-radius)# deadtime 30`	Configures the monitoring dead time. The default is 0 minutes. The range is from 1 through 1440. **Note** If the dead-time interval for a RADIUS server group is greater than zero (0), that value takes precedence over the global dead-time value.
Step 5	(Optional) **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **Example:** `switch(config-radius)# server 10.10.1.1`	Configures the RADIUS server as a member of the RADIUS server group. **Tip** If the specified RADIUS server is not found, configure it using the **radius-server host** command and retry this command.
Step 6	(Optional) **use-vrf** *vrf-name* **Example:** `switch(config-radius)# use-vrf vrf1`	Specifies the VRF to use to contact the servers in the server group.

Step 7	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-radius)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 8	(Optional) **show radius-server groups** [*group-name*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius-server groups`	Displays the RADIUS server group configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring the RADIUS Dead-Time Interval, on page 51

Configuring the Global Source Interface for RADIUS Server Groups

You can configure a global source interface for RADIUS server groups to use when accessing RADIUS servers. You can also configure a different source interface for a specific RADIUS server group. By default, the Cisco NX-OS software uses any available interface.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ip radius source-interface** *interface*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show radius-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**ip radius source-interface** *interface* **Example:** `switch(config)# ip radius source-interface mgmt 0`	Configures the global source interface for all RADIUS server groups configured on the device.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration information.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Groups, on page 40

Allowing Users to Specify a RADIUS Server at Login

By default, the Cisco NX-OS device forwards an authentication request based on the default AAA authentication method. You can configure the Cisco NX-OS device to allow the user to specify a VRF and RADIUS server to send the authentication request by enabling the directed-request option. If you enable this option, the user

can log in as *username* **@** *vrfname* **:** *hostname* , where *vrfname* is the VRF to use and **hostname** is the name of a configured RADIUS server.

Note If you enable the directed-request option, the Cisco NX-OS device uses only the RADIUS method for authentication and not the default local method.

Note User-specified logins are supported only for Telnet sessions.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server directed-request**
3. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **radius commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show radius-server directed-request**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server directed-request** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server directed-request`	Allows users to specify a RADIUS server to send the authentication request when logging in. The default is disabled.
Step 3	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending**	**pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	(Optional) **show radius-server directed-request** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server directed-request`	Displays the directed request configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring the Global RADIUS Transmission Retry Count and Timeout Interval

You can configure a global retransmission retry count and timeout interval for all RADIUS servers. By default, a Cisco NX-OS device retries transmission to a RADIUS server only once before reverting to local authentication. You can increase this number up to a maximum of five retries per server. The timeout interval determines how long the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from RADIUS servers before declaring a timeout failure.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server retransmit** *count*
3. **radius-server timeout** *seconds*
4. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
5. (Optional) **radius commit**
6. **exit**
7. (Optional) **show radius-server**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server retransmit** *count* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server retransmit 3`	Specifies the retransmission count for all RADIUS servers. The default retransmission count is 1 and the range is from 0 to 5.
Step 3	**radius-server timeout** *seconds* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server timeout 10`	Specifies the transmission timeout interval for RADIUS servers. The default timeout interval is 5 seconds and the range is from 1 to 60 seconds.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 5	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 6	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 7	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring the RADIUS Transmission Retry Count and Timeout Interval for a Server

By default, a Cisco NX-OS device retries a transmission to a RADIUS server only once before reverting to local authentication. You can increase this number up to a maximum of five retries per server. You can also set a timeout interval that the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from RADIUS servers before declaring a timeout failure.

Before you begin

Configure one or more RADIUS server hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **retransmit** *count*
3. **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds*
4. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
5. (Optional) **radius commit**
6. **exit**
7. (Optional) **show radius-server**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **retransmit** *count* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host server1 retransmit 3`	Specifies the retransmission count for a specific server. The default is the global value. **Note** The retransmission count value specified for a RADIUS server overrides the count specified for all RADIUS servers.
Step 3	**radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host server1 timeout 10`	Specifies the transmission timeout interval for a specific server. The default is the global value. **Note** The timeout interval value specified for a RADIUS server overrides the interval value specified for all RADIUS servers.
Step 4	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 5	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration and distributes RADIUS configuration to other Cisco NX-OS devices if you have enabled CFS configuration distribution for the user role feature.

Step 6	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 7	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36

Configuring Accounting and Authentication Attributes for RADIUS Servers

You can specify that a RADIUS server is to be used only for accounting purposes or only for authentication purposes. By default, RADIUS servers are used for both accounting and authentication. You can also specify the destination UDP port numbers where RADIUS accounting and authentication messages should be sent if there is a conflict with the default port.

Before you begin

Configure one or more RADIUS server hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. (Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **acct-port** *udp-port*
3. (Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **accounting**
4. (Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **auth-port** *udp-port*
5. (Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **authentication**
6. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
7. (Optional) **radius commit**
8. **exit**
9. (Optional) **show radius-server**
10. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	(Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **acct-port** *udp-port* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.1.1 acct-port 2004`	Specifies a UDP port to use for RADIUS accounting messages. The default UDP port is 1813. The range is from 0 to 65535.
Step 3	(Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **accounting** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.1.1 accounting`	Specifies to use the RADIUS server only for accounting purposes. The default is both accounting and authentication.
Step 4	(Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **auth-port** *udp-port* **Example:**	Specifies a UDP port to use for RADIUS authentication messages. The default UDP port is 1812. The range is from 0 to 65535.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.2.2 auth-port 2005`	
Step 5	(Optional) **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **authentication** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.2.2 authentication`	Specifies to use the RADIUS server only for authentication purposes. The default is both accounting and authentication.
Step 6	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 7	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 8	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 9	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36

Configuring Global Periodic RADIUS Server Monitoring

You can monitor the availability of all RADIUS servers without having to configure the test parameters for each server individually. Any servers for which test parameters are not configured are monitored using the global level parameters.

Note Test parameters that are configured for individual servers take precedence over global test parameters.

The global configuration parameters include the username and password to use for the servers and an idle timer. The idle timer specifies the interval in which a RADIUS server receives no requests before the Cisco NX-OS device sends out a test packet. You can configure this option to test servers periodically, or you can run a one-time only test.

Note To protect network security, we recommend that you use a username that is not the same as an existing username in the RADIUS database.

Note The default idle timer value is 0 minutes. When the idle time interval is 0 minutes, periodic RADIUS server monitoring is not performed.

Before you begin

Enable RADIUS.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]}
3. **radius-server deadtime** *minutes*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show radius-server**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]} **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server test username user1 password Ur2Gd2BH idle-time 3`	Specifies parameters for global server monitoring. The default username is test, and the default password is test. The default value for the idle timer is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes. **Note** For periodic RADIUS server monitoring, the idle timer value must be greater than 0.
Step 3	**radius-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server deadtime 5`	Specifies the number of minutes before the Cisco NX-OS device checks a RADIUS server that was previously unresponsive. The default value is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring Periodic RADIUS Server Monitoring on Individual Servers, on page 50

Configuring Periodic RADIUS Server Monitoring on Individual Servers

You can monitor the availability of individual RADIUS servers. The configuration parameters include the username and password to use for the server and an idle timer. The idle timer specifies the interval during which a RADIUS server receives no requests before the Cisco NX-OS device sends out a test packet. You can configure this option to test servers periodically, or you can run a one-time only test.

Note Test parameters that are configured for individual servers take precedence over global test parameters.

Note For security reasons, we recommend that you do not configure a test username that is the same as an existing user in the RADIUS database.

Note The default idle timer value is 0 minutes. When the idle time interval is 0 minutes, the Cisco NX-OS device does not perform periodic RADIUS server monitoring.

Before you begin

Enable RADIUS.

Add one or more RADIUS server hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]}
3. **radius-server deadtime** *minutes*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show radius-server**

6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]} **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server host 10.10.1.1 test username user1 password Ur2Gd2BH idle-time 3`	Specifies parameters for individual server monitoring. The default username is test, and the default password is test. The default value for the idle timer is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes. **Note** For periodic RADIUS server monitoring, you must set the idle timer to a value greater than 0.
Step 3	**radius-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server deadtime 5`	Specifies the number of minutes before the Cisco NX-OS device checks a RADIUS server that was previously unresponsive. The default value is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 1 to 1440 minutes.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36
Configuring Global Periodic RADIUS Server Monitoring, on page 48

Configuring the RADIUS Dead-Time Interval

You can configure the dead-time interval for all RADIUS servers. The dead-time interval specifies the time that the Cisco NX-OS device waits after declaring a RADIUS server is dead, before sending out a test packet to determine if the server is now alive. The default value is 0 minutes.

Note When the dead-time interval is 0 minutes, RADIUS servers are not marked as dead even if they are not responding. You can configure the dead-time interval for a RADIUS server group.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **radius-server deadtime** *minutes*
3. (Optional) **show radius** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **radius commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show radius-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**radius-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# radius-server deadtime 5`	Configures the dead-time interval. The default value is 0 minutes. The range is from 1 to 1440 minutes.
Step 3	(Optional) **show radius** {**pending**	**pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show radius pending`	Displays the RADIUS configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **radius commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# radius commit`	Applies the RADIUS configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show radius-server** **Example:** `switch# show radius-server`	Displays the RADIUS server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# copy running-config startup-config`	

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Groups, on page 40

Configuring One-Time Passwords

One-time password (OTP) support is available for Cisco NX-OS devices through the use of RSA SecurID token servers. With this feature, users authenticate to a Cisco NX-OS device by entering both a personal identification number (or one-time password) and the token code being displayed at that moment on their RSA SecurID token.

Note The token code used for logging into the Cisco NX-OS device changes every 60 seconds. To prevent problems with device discovery, we recommend using different usernames that are present on the Cisco Secure ACS internal database.

Before you begin

On the Cisco NX-OS device, configure a RADIUS server host and remote default login authentication.

Ensure that the following are installed:

- Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) version 4.2
- RSA Authentication Manager version 7.1 (the RSA SecurID token server)
- RSA ACE Agent/Client

No configuration (other than a RADIUS server host and remote authentication) is required on the Cisco NX-OS device to support one-time passwords. However, you must configure the Cisco Secure ACS as follows:

1. Enable RSA SecurID token server authentication.
2. Add the RSA SecurID token server to the Unknown User Policy database.

Manually Monitoring RADIUS Servers or Groups

You can manually issue a test message to a RADIUS server or to a server group.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **test aaa server radius** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] *username password*
2. **test aaa group** *group-name username password*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**test aaa server radius** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] *username password* **Example:** `switch# test aaa server radius 10.10.1.1 user1 Ur2Gd2BH`	Sends a test message to a RADIUS server to confirm availability.
Step 2	**test aaa group** *group-name username password* **Example:** `switch# test aaa group RadGroup user2 As3He3CI`	Sends a test message to a RADIUS server group to confirm availability.

Verifying the RADIUS Configuration

To display RADIUS configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show radius {**status** | **pending** | **pending-diff**}	Displays the RADIUS Cisco Fabric Services distribution status and other details.
show running-config radius [**all**]	Displays the RADIUS configuration in the running configuration.
show startup-config radius	Displays the RADIUS configuration in the startup configuration.
show radius-server [*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*] [**directed-request** | **groups** | **sorted** | **statistics**]	Displays all configured RADIUS server parameters.

Monitoring RADIUS Servers

You can monitor the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for RADIUS server activity.

Before you begin

Configure one or more RADIUS server hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# show radius-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Displays the RADIUS statistics.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36
Clearing RADIUS Server Statistics, on page 55

Clearing RADIUS Server Statistics

You can display the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for RADIUS server activity.

Before you begin

Configure RADIUS servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) **show radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}
2. **clear radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	(Optional) **show radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# show radius-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Displays the RADIUS server statistics on the Cisco NX-OS device.
Step 2	**clear radius-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# clear radius-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Clears the RADIUS server statistics.

Related Topics

Configuring RADIUS Server Hosts, on page 36

Configuration Example for RADIUS

The following example shows how to configure RADIUS:

```
radius-server key 7 "ToIkLhPpG"
radius-server host 10.10.1.1 key 7 "ShMoMhTl" authentication accounting
aaa group server radius RadServer
    server 10.10.1.1
```

Where to Go Next

You can now configure AAA authentication methods to include the server groups.

Additional References for RADIUS

This section describes additional information related to implementing RADIUS.

Related Documents

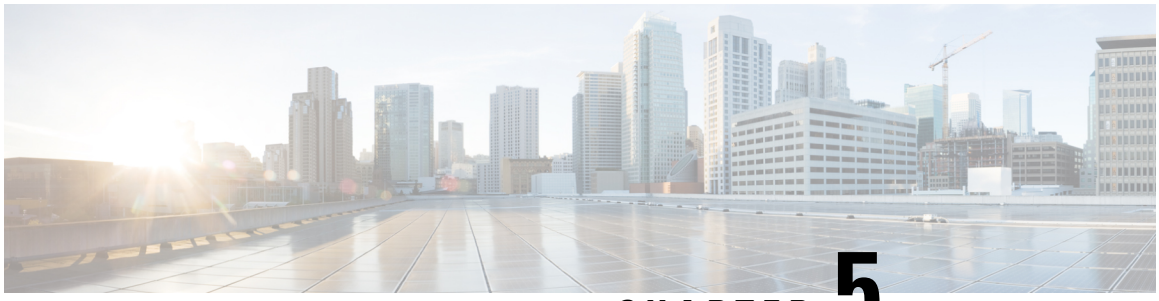
Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS Licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*
VRF configuration	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to RADIUS	To locate and download supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 5

Configuring TACACS+

This chapter describes how to configure the Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) protocol on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About TACACS+

The TACACS+ security protocol provides centralized validation of users attempting to gain access to a Cisco NX-OS device. TACACS+ services are maintained in a database on a TACACS+ daemon running, typically, on a UNIX or Windows NT workstation. You must have access to and must configure a TACACS+ server before the configured TACACS+ features on your Cisco NX-OS device are available.

TACACS+ provides for separate authentication, authorization, and accounting facilities. TACACS+ allows for a single access control server (the TACACS+ daemon) to provide each service—authentication, authorization, and accounting—independently. Each service can be tied into its own database to take advantage of other services available on that server or on the network, depending on the capabilities of the daemon.

The TACACS+ client/server protocol uses TCP (TCP port 49) for transport requirements. Cisco NX-OS devices provide centralized authentication using the TACACS+ protocol.

TACACS+ Advantages

TACACS+ has the following advantages over RADIUS authentication:

- Provides independent AAA facilities. For example, the Cisco NX-OS device can authorize access without authenticating.
- Uses the TCP transport protocol to send data between the AAA client and server, making reliable transfers with a connection-oriented protocol.
- Encrypts the entire protocol payload between the switch and the AAA server to ensure higher data confidentiality. The RADIUS protocol only encrypts passwords.

TACACS+ Operation for User Login

When a user attempts a Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) login to a Cisco NX-OS device using TACACS+, the following actions occur:

Note TACACS+ allows an arbitrary conversation between the daemon and the user until the daemon receives enough information to authenticate the user. This action is usually done by prompting for a username and password combination, but may include prompts for other items, such as your mother's maiden name.

1. When the Cisco NX-OS device establishes a connection, it contacts the TACACS+ daemon to obtain the username and password.
2. The Cisco NX-OS device will eventually receive one of the following responses from the TACACS+ daemon:

   ACCEPT
   User authentication succeeds and service begins. If the Cisco NX-OS device requires user authorization, authorization begins.
   REJECT
   User authentication failed. The TACACS+ daemon either denies further access to the user or prompts the user to retry the login sequence.
   ERROR
   An error occurred at some time during authentication either at the daemon or in the network connection between the daemon and the Cisco NX-OS device. If the Cisco NX-OS device receives an ERROR response, the Cisco NX-OS device tries to use an alternative method for authenticating the user.

   After authentication, the user also undergoes an additional authorization phase if authorization has been enabled on the Cisco NX-OS device. Users must first successfully complete TACACS+ authentication before proceeding to TACACS+ authorization.
3. If TACACS+ authorization is required, the Cisco NX-OS device again contacts the TACACS+ daemon and it returns an ACCEPT or REJECT authorization response. An ACCEPT response contains attributes that are used to direct the EXEC or NETWORK session for that user and determines the services that the user can access.

   Services include the following:

   - Telnet, rlogin, Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP), or EXEC services
   - Connection parameters, including the host or client IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), access list, and user timeouts

Default TACACS+ Server Encryption Type and Secret Key

You must configure the TACACS+ secret key to authenticate the switch to the TACACS+ server. A secret key is a secret text string shared between the Cisco NX-OS device and the TACACS+ server host. The length of the key is restricted to 63 characters and can include any printable ASCII characters (white spaces are not allowed). You can configure a global secret key for all TACACS+ server configurations on the Cisco NX-OS device to use.

You can override the global secret key assignment by explicitly using the **key** option when configuring an individual TACACS+ server.

Command Authorization Support for TACACS+ Servers

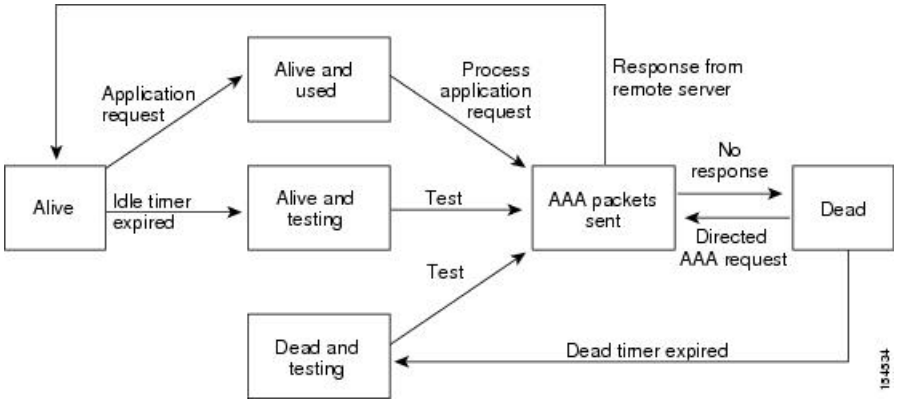
By default, command authorization is done against a local database in the Cisco NX-OS software when an authenticated user enters a command at the command-line interface (CLI). You can also verify authorized commands for authenticated users using TACACS+.

TACACS+ Server Monitoring

An unresponsive TACACS+ server can delay the processing of AAA requests. A Cisco NX-OS device can periodically monitor a TACACS+ server to check whether it is responding (or alive) to save time in processing AAA requests. The Cisco NX-OS device marks unresponsive TACACS+ servers as dead and does not send AAA requests to any dead TACACS+ servers. A Cisco NX-OS device periodically monitors dead TACACS+ servers and brings them to the alive state once they are responding. This process verifies that a TACACS+ server is in a working state before real AAA requests are sent its way. Whenever a TACACS+ server changes to the dead or alive state, a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) trap is generated and the Cisco NX-OS device displays an error message that a failure is taking place before it can impact performance.

Figure 3: TACACS+ Server States

This figure shows the server states for TACACS+ server monitoring.



Note The monitoring interval for alive servers and dead servers are different and can be configured by the user. The TACACS+ server monitoring is performed by sending a test authentication request to the TACACS+ server.

Vendor-Specific Attributes for TACACS+

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) between the network access server and the TACACS+ server. The IETF uses attribute 26. VSAs allow vendors to support their own extended attributes that are not suitable for general use.

Cisco VSA Format for TACACS+

The Cisco TACACS+ implementation supports one vendor-specific option using the format recommended in the IETF specification. The Cisco vendor ID is 9, and the supported option is vendor type 1, which is named cisco-av-pair. The value is a string with the following format:

```
protocol : attribute separator value *
```

The protocol is a Cisco attribute for a particular type of authorization, the separator is = (equal sign) for mandatory attributes, and * (asterisk) indicates optional attributes.

When you use TACACS+ servers for authentication on a Cisco NX-OS device, the TACACS+ protocol directs the TACACS+ server to return user attributes, such as authorization information, along with authentication results. This authorization information is specified through VSAs.

The following VSA protocol options are supported by the Cisco NX-OS software:

Shell
Protocol used in access-accept packets to provide user profile information.

Accounting
Protocol used in accounting-request packets. If a value contains any white spaces, you should enclose the value within double quotation marks.

The Cisco NX-OS software supports the following attributes:

roles

Lists all the roles to which the user belongs. The value field is a string that lists the role names delimited by white space. For example, if the user belongs to roles network-operator and network-admin, the value field would be network-operator network-admin. This subattribute, which the TACACS+ server sends in the VSA portion of the Access-Accept frames, can only be used with the shell protocol value. The following examples show the roles attribute as supported by Cisco ACS:

```
shell:roles=network-operator network-admin

shell:roles*network-operator network-admin
```

Note When you specify a VSA as shell:roles*"network-operator network-admin", this VSA is flagged as an optional attribute and other Cisco devices ignore this attribute.

accountinginfo
Stores accounting information in addition to the attributes covered by a standard TACACS+ accounting protocol. This attribute is sent only in the VSA portion of the Account-Request frames from the TACACS+ client on the switch. It can be used only with the accounting protocol data units (PDUs).

Licensing Requirements for TACACS+

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	TACACS+ requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

Prerequisites for TACACS+

TACACS+ has the following prerequisites:

- Obtain the IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or hostnames for the TACACS+ servers.
- Obtain the secret keys from the TACACS+ servers, if any.
- Ensure that the Cisco NX-OS device is configured as a TACACS+ client of the AAA servers.

Guidelines and Limitations for TACACS+

TACACS+ has the following guidelines and limitations:

- You can configure a maximum of 64 TACACS+ servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.
- If you have a user account configured on the local Cisco NX-OS device that has the same name as a remote user account on an AAA server, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the user roles for the local user account to the remote user, not the user roles configured on the AAA server.
- Cisco recommends that you configure the dead-time interval if more than six servers are configured in a group. If you must configure more than six servers, make sure to set the dead-time interval to a value greater than 0 and enable dead server monitoring by configuring the test username and test password.
- Command authorization on TACACS+ servers is available only for non-console sessions. If you use a console to login to the server, command authorization is disabled.

Default Settings for TACACS+

This table lists the default settings for TACACS+ parameters.

Table 8: Default TACACS+ Parameters Settings

Parameters	Default
TACACS+	Disabled

Parameters	Default
Dead timer interval	0 minutes
Timeout interval	5 seconds
Idle timer interval	0 minutes
Periodic server monitoring username	test
Periodic server monitoring password	test
Privilege level support for TACACS+ authorization	Disabled

Configuring TACACS+

This section describes how to configure TACACS+ on a Cisco NX-OS device.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

TACACS+ Server Configuration Process

Step 1 Enable TACACS+.
Step 2 Establish the TACACS+ server connections to the Cisco NX-OS device.
Step 3 Configure the secret keys for the TACACS+ servers.
Step 4 If needed, configure TACACS+ server groups with subsets of the TACACS+ servers for AAA authentication methods.
Step 5 (Optional) Configure the TCP port.
Step 6 (Optional) If needed, configure periodic TACACS+ server monitoring.
Step 7 (Optional) If TACACS+ distribution is enabled, commit the TACACS+ configuration to the fabric.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Enabling TACACS+

By default, the TACACS+ feature is disabled on the Cisco NX-OS device. You must explicitly enable the TACACS+ feature to access the configuration and verification commands for authentication.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **feature tacacs+**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**feature tacacs+** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature tacacs+`	Enables TACACS+.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts

To access a remote TACACS+ server, you must configure the IP address or the hostname for the TACACS+ server on the Cisco NX-OS device. You can configure up to 64 TACACS+ servers.

Note By default, when you configure a TACACS+ server IP address or hostname on the Cisco NX-OS device, the TACACS+ server is added to the default TACACS+ server group. You can also add the TACACS+ server to another TACACS+ server group.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

Obtain the IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or the hostnames for the remote TACACS+ servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**

2. **tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*}
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server host 10.10.2.2`	Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address or hostname for a TACACS+ server.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the TACACS+ configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62
Configuring TACACS+ Server Groups, on page 67

Configuring Global TACACS+ Keys

You can configure secret TACACS+ keys at the global level for all servers used by the Cisco NX-OS device. A secret key is a shared secret text string between the Cisco NX-OS device and the TACACS+ server hosts.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

Obtain the secret key values for the remote TACACS+ servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server key 0 QsEfThUkO`	Specifies a TACACS+ key for all TACACS+ server. You can specify that the *key-value* is in clear text format (**0**), is type-6 encrypted (**6**), or is type-7 encrypted (**7**). The Cisco NX-OS software encrypts a clear text key before saving it to the running configuration. The default format is clear text. The maximum length is 63 characters. By default, no secret key is configured.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration. **Note** The secret keys are saved in encrypted form in the running configuration. Use the **show running-config** command to display the encrypted secret keys.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Configuring a Key for a Specific TACACS+ Server

You can configure secret keys for a TACACS+ server. A secret key is a shared secret text string between the Cisco NX-OS device and the TACACS+ server host.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

Obtain the secret key values for the remote TACACS+ servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*} **key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*} **key** [**0** | **6** | **7**] *key-value* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server host 10.10.1.1 key 0 PlIjUhYg`	Specifies a secret key for a specific TACACS+ server. You can specify that the *key-value* is in clear text format (**0**), is type-6 encrypted (**6**), or is type-7 encrypted (**7**). The Cisco NX-OS software encrypts a clear text key before saving it to the running configuration. The default format is clear text. The maximum length is 63 characters. This secret key is used instead of the global secret key.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration. **Note** The secret keys are saved in encrypted form in the running configuration. Use the **show running-config** command to display the encrypted secret keys.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring TACACS+ Server Groups

You can specify one or more remote AAA servers to authenticate users using server groups. All members of a group must belong to the TACACS+ protocol. The servers are tried in the same order in which you configure them.

You can configure these server groups at any time but they only take effect when you apply them to an AAA service.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa group server tacacs+** *group-name*
3. **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*}
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show tacacs-server groups**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa group server tacacs+** *group-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ TacServer`
	`switch(config-tacacs+)#`
		Creates a TACACS+ server group and enters the TACACS+ server group configuration mode for that group.

Step 3	**server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **Example:** `switch(config-tacacs+)# server 10.10.2.2`	Configures the TACACS+ server as a member of the TACACS+ server group. If the specified TACACS+ server is not found, configure it using the **tacacs-server host** command and retry this command.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-tacacs+)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits TACACS+ server group configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show tacacs-server groups** **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs-server groups`	Displays the TACACS+ server group configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62
Remote AAA Services, on page 10
Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts, on page 63
Configuring the TACACS+ Dead-Time Interval, on page 76

Configuring the Global Source Interface for TACACS+ Server Groups

You can configure a global source interface for TACACS+ server groups to use when accessing TACACS+ servers. You can also configure a different source interface for a specific TACACS+ server group. By default, the Cisco NX-OS software uses any available interface.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ip tacacs source-interface** *interface*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**ip tacacs source-interface** *interface* **Example:** `switch(config)# ip tacacs source-interface mgmt 0`	Configures the global source interface for all TACACS+ server groups configured on the device.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration information.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62
Configuring TACACS+ Server Groups, on page 67

Allowing Users to Specify a TACACS+ Server at Login

You can configure the switch to allow the user to specify which TACACS+ server to send the authentication request by enabling the directed-request option. By default, a Cisco NX-OS device forwards an authentication request based on the default AAA authentication method. If you enable this option, the user can log in as *username* **@** *vrfname* **:** *hostname* , where *vrfname* is the VRF to use and *hostname* is the name of a configured TACACS+ server.

Note If you enable the directed-request option, the Cisco NX-OS device uses only the TACACS+ method for authentication and not the default local method.

Note User-specified logins are supported only for Telnet sessions.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server directed-request**
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server directed-request**

7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server directed-request** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server directed-request`	Allows users to specify a TACACS+ server to send the authentication request when logging in. The default is disabled.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the pending TACACS+ configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server directed-request** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server directed-request`	Displays the TACACS+ directed request configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Configuring the Timeout Interval for a TACACS+ Server

You can set a timeout interval that the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from a TACACS+ server before declaring a timeout failure. The timeout interval determines how long the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from a TACACS+ server before declaring a timeout failure.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds*
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server host server1 timeout 10`	Specifies the timeout interval for a specific server. The default is the global value. **Note** The timeout interval value specified for a TACACS+ server overrides the global timeout interval value specified for all TACACS+ servers.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the TACACS+ configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Configuring TCP Ports

You can configure another TCP port for the TACACS+ servers if there are conflicts with another application. By default, Cisco NX-OS devices use port 49 for all TACACS+ requests.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **port** *tcp-port*
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **port** *tcp-port* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server host 10.10.1.1 port 2`	Specifies the TCP port to use for TACACS+ messages to the server. The default TCP port is 49. The range is from 1 to 65535.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ distribution pending`	Displays the TACACS+ configuration pending for distribution.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Configuring Global Periodic TACACS+ Server Monitoring

You can monitor the availability of all TACACS+ servers without having to configure the test parameters for each server individually. Any servers for which test parameters are not configured are monitored using the global level parameters.

Note Test parameters that are configured for individual servers take precedence over global test parameters.

The global configuration parameters include the username and password to use for the servers and an idle timer. The idle timer specifies the interval in which a TACACS+ server receives no requests before the Cisco NX-OS device sends out a test packet. You can configure this option to test servers periodically, or you can run a one-time only test.

Note The test parameters are distributed across switches. If even one switch in the fabric is running an older release, the test parameters are not distributed to any switch in the fabric.

Note To protect network security, we recommend that you use a username that is not the same as an existing username in the TACACS+ database.

Note The default idle timer value is 0 minutes. When the idle time interval is 0 minutes, periodic TACACS+ server monitoring is not performed.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]}
3. **tacacs-server dead-time** *minutes*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]} **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server test username user1 password Ur2Gd2BH idle-time 3`	Specifies parameters for global server monitoring. The default username is test, and the default password is test. The default value for the idle timer is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes. **Note** For periodic TACACS+ server monitoring, the idle timer value must be greater than 0.
Step 3	**tacacs-server dead-time** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server dead-time 5`	Specifies the number of minutes before the Cisco NX-OS device checks a TACACS+ server that was previously unresponsive. The default value is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring Periodic TACACS+ Server Monitoring on Individual Servers, on page 75

Configuring Periodic TACACS+ Server Monitoring on Individual Servers

You can monitor the availability of individual TACACS+ servers. The configuration parameters include the username and password to use for the server and an idle timer. The idle timer specifies the interval in which a TACACS+ server receives no requests before the Cisco NX-OS device sends out a test packet. You can configure this option to test servers periodically, or you can run a one-time only test.

Note Test parameters that are configured for individual servers take precedence over global test parameters.

Note To protect network security, we recommend that you use a username that is not the same as an existing username in the TACACS+ database.

Note The default idle timer value is 0 minutes. When the idle time interval is 0 minutes, periodic TACACS+ server monitoring is not performed.

Note The test parameters are distributed across switches. The test parameters are not distributed to any switch in the fabric.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

Add one or more TACACS+ server hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]}
3. **tacacs-server dead-time** *minutes*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	**tacacs-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test** {**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]} **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server host 10.10.1.1 test username user1 password Ur2Gd2BH idle-time 3`	Specifies parameters for individual server monitoring. The default username is test, and the default password is test. The default value for the idle timer is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes. **Note** For periodic TACACS+ server monitoring, the idle timer value must be greater than 0.
Step 3	**tacacs-server dead-time** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server dead-time 5`	Specifies the number of minutes before the Cisco NX-OS device checks a TACACS+ server that was previously unresponsive. The default value is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 0 to 1440 minutes.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts, on page 63
Configuring Global Periodic TACACS+ Server Monitoring, on page 73

Configuring the TACACS+ Dead-Time Interval

You can configure the dead-time interval for all TACACS+ servers. The dead-time interval specifies the time that the Cisco NX-OS device waits, after declaring a TACACS+ server is dead, before sending out a test packet to determine if the server is now alive.

Note When the dead-timer interval is 0 minutes, TACACS+ servers are not marked as dead even if they are not responding. You can configure the dead-timer per group.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **tacacs-server deadtime** *minutes*
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**tacacs-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs-server deadtime 5`	Configures the global dead-time interval. The default value is 0 minutes. The range is from 1 to 1440 minutes.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending**	**pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the pending TACACS+ configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring ASCII Authentication

You can enable ASCII authentication on the TACACS+ server.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authentication login ascii-authentication**
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show tacacs-server**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authentication login ascii-authentication** **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authentication login ascii-authentication`	Enables ASCII authentication. The default is disabled.
Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending**	**pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the pending TACACS+ configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show tacacs-server** **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server`	Displays the TACACS+ server configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring AAA Authorization on TACACS+ Servers

You can configure the default AAA authorization method for TACACS+ servers.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authorization ssh-certificate default** {**group** *group-list* [**none**] | **local** | **none**}
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**]
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authorization ssh-certificate default** {**group** *group-list* [**none**]	**local**	**none**} **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authorization ssh-certificate default group TACACSServer1 TACACSServer2`	Configures the default AAA authorization method for the TACACS+ servers. The **ssh-certificate** keyword configures TACACS+ or local authorization with certificate authentication. The default authorization is local authorization, which is the list of authorized commands for the user's assigned role. The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of TACACS+ server group names. Servers belonging to this group are contacted for AAA authorization. The **local** method uses the local database for authorization, and the **none** method specifies that no AAA authorization be used.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**] **Example:** `switch# show aaa authorization`	Displays the AAA authorization configuration. The **all** keyword displays the default values.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# copy running-config startup-config`	

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62

Configuring Command Authorization on TACACS+ Servers

You can configure authorization for commands on TACACS+ servers.

Caution Command authorization disables user role-based authorization control (RBAC), including the default roles.

Note If you use a console to login to the server, command authorization is disabled. Authorization is available for both non-console and console sessions. By default, command authorization is disabled for console sessions even if it is configured for default (non-console) sessions. You must explicitly configure a AAA group for the console to enable command authorization for console sessions.

Note By default, context sensitive help and command tab completion show only the commands supported for a user as defined by the assigned roles. When you enable command authorization, the Cisco NX-OS software displays all commands in the context sensitive help and in tab completion, regardless of the role assigned to the user.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authorization** {**commands** | **config-commands**} {**console** | **default** } {**group** *group-list* [**local**] | **local**}
3. (Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
4. (Optional) **tacacs+ commit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**]
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authorization** {**commands** | **config-commands**} {**console** | **default** } {**group** *group-list* [**local**] | **local**}
	Example:
	`switch(config)# aaa authorization commands default group TacGroup`
	`Per command authorization will disable RBAC for all`
	`users. Proceed (y/n)?`
		Configures the command authorization method for specific roles on a TACACS+ server.
		The **commands** keyword configures authorization sources for all EXEC commands, and the **config-commands** keyword configures authorization sources for all configuration commands.
		The **console** keyword configures command authorization for a console session, and the **default** keyword configures command authorization for a non-console session.
		The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of TACACS+ server group names. Servers belonging to this group are contacted for command authorization. The **local** method uses the local role-based database for authorization.
		The **local** method is used only if all the configured server groups fail to respond and you have configured **local** as the fallback method. The default method is **local** .
		If you have not configured a fallback method after the TACACS+ server group method, authorization fails if all server groups fail to respond.
		If you press **Enter** at the confirmation prompt, the default action is **n**.

Step 3	(Optional) **show tacacs+** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show tacacs+ pending`	Displays the pending TACACS+ configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **tacacs+ commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# tacacs+ commit`	Applies the TACACS+ configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**] **Example:**	Displays the AAA authorization configuration. The **all** keyword displays the default values.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# show aaa authorization`	
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62
Testing Command Authorization on TACACS+ Servers, on page 82

Testing Command Authorization on TACACS+ Servers

You can test the command authorization for a user on the TACACS+ servers.

Note You must send correct commands for authorization or else the results may not be reliable.

Note The **test** command uses the default (non-console) method for authorization, not the console method.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

Ensure that you have configured command authorization for the TACACS+ servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **test aaa authorization command-type** {**commands** | **config-commands**} **user** *username* **command** *command-string*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**test aaa authorization command-type** {**commands** | **config-commands**} **user** *username* **command** *command-string*
	Example:
	`switch# test aaa authorization command-type commands`
	`user TestUser command reload`
		Tests a user's authorization for a command on the TACACS+ servers.
		The **commands** keyword specifies only EXEC commands and the **config-commands** keyword specifies only configuration commands.
		Note Put double quotes (") before and after the *command-string* argument if it contains spaces.

Related Topics

Enabling TACACS+ , on page 62
Configuring Command Authorization on TACACS+ Servers, on page 80
Configuring User Accounts and RBAC, on page 137

Enabling and Disabling Command Authorization Verification

You can enable and disable command authorization verificaiton on the command-line interface (CLI) for the default user session or for another username.

Note The commands do no execute when you enable authorization verification.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **terminal verify-only** [**username** *username*]
2. **terminal no verify-only** [**username** *username*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**terminal verify-only** [**username** *username*] **Example:** `switch# terminal verify-only`	Enables command authorization verification. After you enter this command, the Cisco NX-OS software indicates whether the commands you enter are authorized or not.
Step 2	**terminal no verify-only** [**username** *username*] **Example:** `switch# terminal no verify-only`	Disables command authorization verification.

Configuring Privilege Level Support for Authorization on TACACS+ Servers

You can configure privilege level support for authorization on TACACS+ servers.

Unlike Cisco IOS devices, which use privilege levels to determine authorization, Cisco NX-OS devices use role-based access control (RBAC). To enable both types of devices to be administered by the same TACACS+ servers, you can map the privilege levels configured on TACACS+ servers to user roles configured on Cisco NX-OS devices.

When a user authenticates with a TACACS+ server, the privilege level is obtained and used to form a local user role name of the format “priv-*n*,” where *n* is the privilege level. The user assumes the permissions of this local role. Sixteen privilege levels, which map directly to corresponding user roles, are available. The following table shows the user role permissions that correspond to each privilege level.

Privilege Level	User Role Permissions
15	network-admin permissions

Privilege Level	User Role Permissions
13 - 1	• Standalone role permissions, if the **feature privilege** command is disabled. • Same permissions as privilege level 0 with cumulative privileges for roles, if the **feature privilege** command is enabled.
0	Permission to execute **show** commands and **exec** commands (such as **ping** , **trace** , and **ssh**).

Important Only the network administrator can escalate privileges to the root. As per the new security measures, a network operator (priv-1 user) is not allowed to collect show tech. Therefore, the enable command does not help to escalate the privileges.

Note
- When the **feature privilege** command is enabled, privilege roles inherit the permissions of lower level privilege roles.
- You must also configure the privilege level for the Cisco NX-OS device on the Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS).

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **feature privilege**
3. [**no**] **enable secret** [**0** | **5**] *password* [**priv-lvl** *priv-lvl* | **all**]
4. [**no**] **username** *username* **priv-lvl** *n*
5. (Optional) **show privilege**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**
7. **exit**
8. **enable** *level*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **feature privilege** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature privilege`	Enables or disables the cumulative privilege of roles. Users can see the **enable** command only if this feature is enabled. The default is disabled.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	[**no**] **enable secret** [**0** | **5**] *password* [**priv-lvl** *priv-lvl* | **all**] **Example:** `switch(config)# enable secret 5 def456 priv-lvl 15`	Enables or disables a secret password for a specific privilege level. Users are prompted to enter the correct password upon each privilege level escalation. The default is disabled. You can enter **0** to specify that the password is in clear text or **5** to specify that the password is in encrypted format. The *password* argument can be up to 64 alphanumeric characters. The *priv-lvl* argument is from 1 to 15. **Note** To enable the secret password, you must have enabled the cumulative privilege of roles by entering the **feature privilege** command.
Step 4	[**no**] **username** *username* **priv-lvl** *n* **Example:** `switch(config)# username user2 priv-lvl 15`	Enables or disables a user to use privilege levels for authorization. The default is disabled. The **priv-lvl** keyword specifies the privilege level to which the user is assigned. There is no default privilege level. Privilege levels 0 to 15 (priv-lvl 0 to priv-lvl 15) map to user roles priv-0 to priv-15.
Step 5	(Optional) **show privilege** **Example:** `switch(config)# show privilege`	Displays the username, current privilege level, and status of cumulative privilege support.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Step 7	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 8	**enable** *level* **Example:** `switch# enable 15`	Enables a user to move to a higher privilege level. This command prompts for the secret password. The *level* argument specifies the privilege level to which the user is granted access. The only available level is 15.

Related Topics

Permitting or Denying Commands for Users of Privilege Roles, on page 85
Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Permitting or Denying Commands for Users of Privilege Roles

As a network administrator, you can modify the privilege roles to permit users to execute specific commands or to prevent users from running those commands.

You must follow these guidelines when changing the rules of privilege roles:

- You cannot modify the priv-14 and priv-15 roles.
- You can add deny rules only to the priv-0 role.
- These commands are always permitted for the priv-0 role: **configure**, **copy**, **dir**, **enable**, **ping**, **show**, **ssh**, **telnet**, **terminal**, **traceroute**, **end**, and **exit**.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **role name priv-** *n*
3. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} **command** *command-string*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **role name priv-** *n*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role name priv-5`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Enables or disables a privilege role and enters role configuration mode. The *n* argument specifies the privilege level and is a number between 0 and 13.

Step 3	**rule** *number* {**deny**	**permit**} **command** *command-string* **Example:** `switch(config-role)# rule 2 permit command pwd`	Configures a command rule for users of privilege roles. These rules permit or deny users to execute specific commands. You can configure up to 256 rules for each role. The rule number determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1. The *command-string* argument can contain spaces. **Note** Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits role configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	

Related Topics

Configuring Privilege Level Support for Authorization on TACACS+ Servers, on page 83
Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Manually Monitoring TACACS+ Servers or Groups

You can manually issue a test message to a TACACS+ server or to a server group.

Before you begin

Enable TACACS+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **test aaa server tacacs+** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] *username password*
2. **test aaa group** *group-name username password*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**test aaa server tacacs+** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] *username password* **Example:** `switch# test aaa server tacacs+ 10.10.1.1 user1 Ur2Gd2BH`	Sends a test message to a TACACS+ server to confirm availability.
Step 2	**test aaa group** *group-name username password* **Example:** `switch# test aaa group TacGroup user2 As3He3CI`	Sends a test message to a TACACS+ server group to confirm availability.

Related Topics

Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts, on page 63
Configuring TACACS+ Server Groups, on page 67

Disabling TACACS+

You can disable TACACS+.

Caution When you disable TACACS+, all related configurations are automatically discarded.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no feature tacacs+**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no feature tacacs+** **Example:** `switch(config)# no feature tacacs+`	Disables TACACS+.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Monitoring TACACS+ Servers

You can monitor the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for TACACS+ server activity.

Before you begin

Configure TACACS+ servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:**	Displays the TACACS+ statistics.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# show tacacs-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	

Related Topics

Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts, on page 63
Clearing TACACS+ Server Statistics, on page 89

Clearing TACACS+ Server Statistics

You can display the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for TACACS+ server activity.

Before you begin

Configure TACACS+ servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) **show tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}
2. **clear tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	(Optional) **show tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# show tacacs-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Displays the TACACS+ server statistics on the Cisco NX-OS device.
Step 2	**clear tacacs-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# clear tacacs-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Clears the TACACS+ server statistics.

Related Topics

Configuring TACACS+ Server Hosts, on page 63

Verifying the TACACS+ Configuration

To display the TACACS+ configuration, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show tacacs+ { **status** | **pending** | **pending-diff**}	Displays the TACACS+ Cisco Fabric Services distribution status and other details.

Command	Purpose
show running-config tacacs [**all**]	Displays the TACACS+ configuration in the running configuration.
show startup-config tacacs	Displays the TACACS+ configuration in the startup configuration.
show tacacs-server [*host-name* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*] [**directed-request** | **groups** | **sorted** | **statistics**]	Displays all configured TACACS+ server parameters.
show privilege	Displays the current privilege level, username, and status of cumulative privilege support.

Configuration Examples for TACACS+

The following example shows how to configure a TACACS+ server host and server group:

```
feature tacacs+
tacacs-server key 7 "ToIkLhPpG"
tacacs-server host 10.10.2.2 key 7 "ShMoMhTl"
aaa group server tacacs+ TacServer
    server 10.10.2.2
```

The following example shows how to configure and use command authorization verification:

```
switch# terminal verify-only
switch# show interface ethernet 7/2 brief
%Success
switch# terminal no verify-only
switch# show interface ethernet 7/2 brief

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Ethernet      VLAN   Type Mode   Status  Reason                   Speed     Port
Interface                                                                  Ch #
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Eth7/2        1      eth  access down    SFP not inserted           auto(D) --
```

The following example shows how to enable the cumulative privilege of roles, configure a secret password for privilege level 2, and configure user3 for privilege level 2 authorization:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature privilege
switch(config)# enable secret def456 priv-lvl 2
switch(config)# username user3 priv-lvl 2
switch(config)# show privilege
User name: user3
Current privilege level: -2
Feature privilege: Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config)# exit
```

The following example shows how to change user3 from the priv-2 role to the priv-15 role. After entering the **enable 15** command, the user is prompted to enter the password that was configured by the administrator using the **enable secret** command. Privilege level 15 gives this user network-admin privileges under the enable mode.

```
User Access Verification
login: user3
Password: ******
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright ©) 2013, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under
license. Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1. A copy of each
such license is available at
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php and
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php
switch#
switch# enable 15
Password: def456
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright ©) 2013, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under
license. Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1. A copy of each
such license is available at
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php and
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php
switch-enable#
```

The following example shows how to permit all users with roles priv-5 and above to execute the **pwd** command:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name priv-5
switch(config-role)# rule 1 permit command pwd
```

The following example shows how to deny the **show running-config** command to all users with roles below priv-5. First, you must remove the permission to execute this command from the priv-0 role; then you must permit the command at role priv-5 so that users with roles priv-5 and above have permission to run the command.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name priv-0
switch(config-role)# rule 2 deny command show running-config
switch(config-role)# exit
switch(config)# role name priv-5
switch(config-role)# rule 3 permit command show running-config
switch(config-role)# exit
```

Where to Go Next

You can now configure AAA authentication methods to include the server groups.

Additional References for TACACS+

This section includes additional information related to implementing TACACS+.

Related Documents

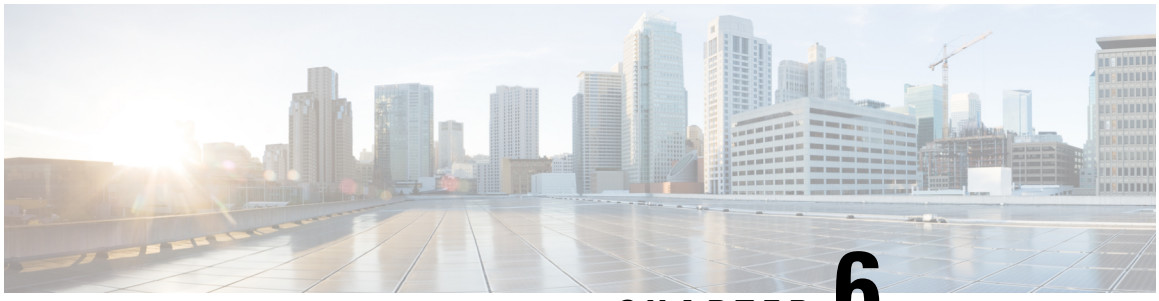
Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*
VRF configuration	*Cisco NX-OS 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to TACACS+	To locate and download supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 6

Configuring LDAP

This chapter describes how to configure the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) provides centralized validation of users attempting to gain access to a Cisco NX-OS device. LDAP services are maintained in a database on an LDAP daemon running typically on a UNIX or Windows NT workstation. You must have access to and must configure an LDAP server before the configured LDAP features on your Cisco NX-OS device are available.

LDAP provides for separate authentication and authorization facilities. LDAP allows for a single access control server (the LDAP daemon) to provide each service authentication and authorization independently. Each service can be tied into its own database to take advantage of other services available on that server or on the network, depending on the capabilities of the daemon.

The LDAP client/server protocol uses TCP (port 389) for transport requirements. Cisco NX-OS devices provide centralized authentication using the LDAP protocol.

LDAP Authentication and Authorization

Clients establish a TCP connection and authentication session with an LDAP server through a simple bind (username and password). As part of the authorization process, the LDAP server searches its database to retrieve the user profile and other information.

You can configure the bind operation to first bind and then search, where authentication is performed first and authorization next, or to first search and then bind. The default method is to first search and then bind.

The advantage of searching first and binding later is that the distinguished name (DN) received in the search result can be used as the user DN during binding rather than forming a DN by prepending the username (cn attribute) with the baseDN. This method is especially helpful when the user DN is different from the username plus the baseDN. For the user bind, the bindDN is constructed as baseDN + append-with-baseDN, where append-with-baseDN has a default value of cn=$userid.

Note As an alternative to the bind method, you can establish LDAP authentication using the compare method, which compares the attribute values of a user entry at the server. For example, the user password attribute can be compared for authentication. The default password attribute type is userPassword.

LDAP Operation for User Login

When a user attempts a Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) login to a Cisco NX-OS device using LDAP, the following actions occur:

1. When the Cisco NX-OS device establishes a connection, it contacts the LDAP daemon to obtain the username and password.
2. The Cisco NX-OS device eventually receives one of the following responses from the LDAP daemon:
   - ACCEPT—User authentication succeeds and service begins. If the Cisco NX-OS device requires user authorization, authorization begins.
   - REJECT—User authentication fails. The LDAP daemon either denies further access to the user or prompts the user to retry the login sequence.
   - ERROR—An error occurs at some time during authentication either at the daemon or in the network connection between the daemon and the Cisco NX-OS device. If the Cisco NX-OS device receives an ERROR response, the Cisco NX-OS device tries to use an alternative method for authenticating the user.

   After authentication, the user also undergoes an additional authorization phase if authorization has been enabled on the Cisco NX-OS device. Users must first successfully complete LDAP authentication before proceeding to LDAP authorization.
3. If LDAP authorization is required, the Cisco NX-OS device again contacts the LDAP daemon, and it returns an ACCEPT or REJECT authorization response. An ACCEPT response contains attributes that are used to direct the EXEC or NETWORK session for that user and determines the services that the user can access. Services include the following:
   - Telnet, rlogin, Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP), or EXEC services
   - Connection parameters, including the host or client IP address (IPv4 or IPv6), access list, and user timeouts

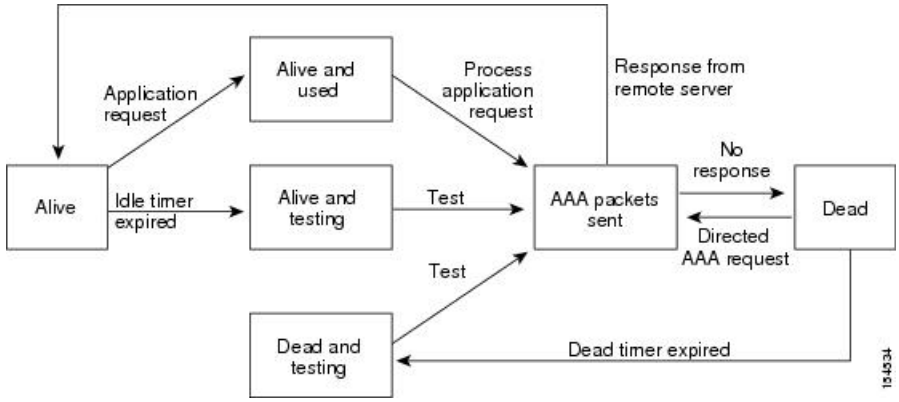
Note LDAP allows an arbitrary conversation between the daemon and the user until the daemon receives enough information to authenticate the user. This action is usually done by prompting for a username and password combination but may include prompts for other items.

Note In LDAP, authorization can occur before authentication.

LDAP Server Monitoring

An unresponsive LDAP server can delay the processing of AAA requests. A Cisco NX-OS device can periodically monitor an LDAP server to check whether it is responding (or alive) to save time in processing AAA requests. The Cisco NX-OS device marks unresponsive LDAP servers as dead and does not send AAA requests to any dead LDAP servers. A Cisco NX-OS device periodically monitors dead LDAP servers and brings them to the alive state once they are responding. This process verifies that an LDAP server is in a working state before real AAA requests are sent its way. Whenever an LDAP server changes to the dead or alive state, a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) trap is generated, and the Cisco NX-OS device displays an error message that a failure is taking place before it can impact performance. The following figure shows the server states for LDAP server monitoring.

Figure 4: LDAP Server States



Note The monitoring interval for alive servers and dead servers is different and can be configured by the user. The LDAP server monitoring is performed by sending a test authentication request to the LDAP server.

Vendor-Specific Attributes for LDAP

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) between the network access server and the LDAP server. The IETF uses attribute 26. VSAs allow vendors to support their own extended attributes that are not suitable for general use.

Cisco VSA Format for LDAP

The Cisco LDAP implementation supports one vendor-specific option using the format recommended in the IETF specification. The Cisco vendor ID is 9, and the supported option is vendor type 1, which is named cisco-av-pair. The value is a string with the following format:

```
protocol : attribute separator value *
```

The protocol is a Cisco attribute for a particular type of authorization, the separator is an = (equal sign) for mandatory attributes, and an * (asterisk) indicates optional attributes. When you use LDAP servers for authentication on a Cisco NX-OS device, LDAP directs the LDAP server to return user attributes, such as authorization information, along with authentication results. This authorization information is specified through VSAs. The following VSA protocol option is supported by the Cisco NX-OS software:

- Shell—Protocol used in access-accept packets to provide user profile information.

The Cisco NX-OS software supports the following attribute:

- roles—Lists all the roles to which the user belongs. The value field is a string that lists the role names delimited by white space.

Virtualization Support for LDAP

The Cisco NX-OS device uses virtual routing and forwarding instances (VRFs) to access the LDAP servers. For more information on VRFs, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide.*

Licensing Requirements for LDAP

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	LDAP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for LDAP

LDAP has the following prerequisites:

- Obtain the IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or hostnames for the LDAP servers.
- Ensure that the Cisco NX-OS device is configured as an LDAP client of the AAA servers.

Guidelines and Limitations for LDAP

LDAP has the following guidelines and limitations:

- You can configure a maximum of 64 LDAP servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.
- Cisco NX-OS supports only LDAP version 3.
- Cisco NX-OS supports only these LDAP servers:
  - OpenLDAP
  - Microsoft Active Directory
- LDAP over Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) supports only SSL version 3 and Transport Layer Security (TLS) version 1.
- If you have a user account configured on the local Cisco NX-OS device that has the same name as a remote user account on a AAA server, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the user roles for the local user account to the remote user, not the user roles configured on the AAA server.

Default Settings for LDAP

This table lists the default settings for LDAP parameters.

Parameters	Default
LDAP	Disabled
LDAP authentication method	First search and then bind
LDAP authentication mechanism	Plain
Dead-time interval	0 minutes
Timeout interval	5 seconds
Idle timer interval	60 minutes
Periodic server monitoring username	test
Periodic server monitoring password	Cisco

Configuring LDAP

This section describes how to configure LDAP on a Cisco NX-OS device.

LDAP Server Configuration Process

You can configure LDAP servers by following this configuration process.

1. Enable LDAP.
2. Establish the LDAP server connections to the Cisco NX-OS device.
3. If needed, configure LDAP server groups with subsets of the LDAP servers for AAA authentication methods.

4. (Optional) Configure the TCP port.
5. (Optional) Configure the default AAA authorization method for the LDAP server.
6. (Optional) Configure an LDAP search map.
7. (Optional) If needed, configure periodic LDAP server monitoring.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99
Configuring the RootDN for an LDAP Server, on page 100
Configuring LDAP Server Groups, on page 101
Configuring TCP Ports, on page 105
Configuring LDAP Search Maps, on page 106
Configuring Periodic LDAP Server Monitoring, on page 107

Enabling or Disabling LDAP

By default, the LDAP feature is disabled on the Cisco NX-OS device. You must explicitly enable the LDAP feature to access the configuration and verification commands for authentication.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **feature ldap**
3. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Required: [**no**] **feature ldap** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature ldap`	Enables LDAP. Use the **no** form of this command to disable LDAP. **Note** When you disable LDAP, all related configurations are automatically discarded.
Step 3	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99
Configuring the RootDN for an LDAP Server, on page 100

Configuring LDAP Server Hosts

To access a remote LDAP server, you must configure the IP address or the hostname for the LDAP server on the Cisco NX-OS device. You can configure up to 64 LDAP servers.

Note By default, when you configure an LDAP server IP address or hostname on the Cisco NX-OS device, the LDAP server is added to the default LDAP server group. You can also add the LDAP server to another LDAP server group.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

Obtain the IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or the hostnames for the remote LDAP servers.

If you plan to enable the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol, make sure that the LDAP server certificate is manually configured on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*} [**enable-ssl**]
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*} [**enable-ssl**] **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server host 10.10.2.2 enable-ssl`	Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address or hostname for an LDAP server. The **enable-ssl** keyword ensures the integrity and confidentiality of the transferred data by causing the LDAP

	Command or Action	Purpose
		client to establish an SSL session prior to sending the bind or search request.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring LDAP Server Groups, on page 101
Configuring the RootDN for an LDAP Server, on page 100
Configuring LDAP Server Groups, on page 101
Configuring Periodic LDAP Server Monitoring, on page 107
Monitoring LDAP Servers, on page 110
Clearing LDAP Server Statistics, on page 111

Configuring the RootDN for an LDAP Server

You can configure the root designated name (DN) for the LDAP server database. The rootDN is used to bind to the LDAP server to verify its state.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

Obtain the IPv4 or IPv6 addresses or the hostnames for the remote LDAP servers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **rootDN** *root-name* [**password** *password* [**port** *tcp-port* [**timeout** *seconds*] | **timeout** *seconds*]]
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure terminal** **Example:**	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# configure terminal` `switch(config)#`	
Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **rootDN** *root-name* [**password** *password* [**port** *tcp-port* [**timeout** *seconds*] | **timeout** *seconds*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server host 10.10.1.1 rootDN cn=manager,dc=acme,dc=com password Ur2Gd2BH timeout 60`	Specifies the rootDN for the LDAP server database and the bind password for the root. Optionally specifies the TCP port to use for LDAP messages to the server. The range is from 1 to 65535, and the default TCP port is the global value or 389 if a global value is not configured. Also specifies the timeout interval for the server. The range is from 1 to 60 seconds, and the default timeout is the global value or 5 seconds if a global value is not configured.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99

Configuring LDAP Server Groups

You can specify one or more remote AAA servers to authenticate users using server groups. All members of a group must be configured to use LDAP. The servers are tried in the same order in which you configure them.

You can configure these server groups at any time, but they take effect only when you apply them to an AAA service.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **aaa group server ldap** *group-name*
3. [**no**] **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*}
4. (Optional) [**no**] **authentication** {**bind-first** [**append-with-baseDN** *DNstring*] | **compare** [**password-attribute** *password*]}
5. (Optional) [**no**] **enable user-server-group**
6. (Optional) [**no**] **enable Cert-DN-match**

7. (Optional) [**no**] **use-vrf** *vrf-name*
8. **exit**
9. (Optional) **show ldap-server groups**
10. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **aaa group server ldap** *group-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# aaa group server ldap LDAPServer1`
	`switch(config-ldap)#`
		Creates an LDAP server group and enters the LDAP server group configuration mode for that group.

Step 3	[**no**] **server** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *host-name*} **Example:** `switch(config-ldap)# server 10.10.2.2`	Configures the LDAP server as a member of the LDAP server group. If the specified LDAP server is not found, configure it using the **ldap-server host** command and retry this command.
Step 4	(Optional) [**no**] **authentication** {**bind-first** [**append-with-baseDN** *DNstring*] | **compare** [**password-attribute** *password*]} **Example:** `switch(config-ldap)# authentication compare password-attribute TyuL8r`	Performs LDAP authentication using the bind or compare method. The default LDAP authentication method is the bind method using first search and then bind.
Step 5	(Optional) [**no**] **enable user-server-group** **Example:** `switch(config-ldap)# enable user-server-group`	Enables group validation. The group name should be configured in the LDAP server. Users can login through public-key authentication only if the username is listed as a member of this configured group in the LDAP server.
Step 6	(Optional) [**no**] **enable Cert-DN-match** **Example:** `switch(config-ldap)# enable Cert-DN-match`	Enables users to login only if the user profile lists the subject-DN of the user certificate as authorized for login.
Step 7	(Optional) [**no**] **use-vrf** *vrf-name* **Example:** `switch(config-ldap)# use-vrf vrf1`	Specifies the VRF to use to contact the servers in the server group.

Step 8	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-ldap)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits LDAP server group configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	(Optional) **show ldap-server groups** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server groups`	Displays the LDAP server group configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99

Configuring the Global LDAP Timeout Interval

You can set a global timeout interval that determines how long the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from all LDAP servers before declaring a timeout failure.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server timeout** *seconds*
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server timeout** *seconds* **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server timeout 10`	Specifies the timeout interval for LDAP servers. The default timeout interval is 5 seconds. The range is from 1 to 60 seconds.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring the Timeout Interval for an LDAP Server, on page 104
Configuring the Timeout Interval for an LDAP Server, on page 104

Configuring the Timeout Interval for an LDAP Server

You can set a timeout interval that determines how long the Cisco NX-OS device waits for responses from an LDAP server before declaring a timeout failure.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds*
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **timeout** *seconds* **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server host server1 timeout 10`	Specifies the timeout interval for a specific server. The default is the global value. **Note** The timeout interval value specified for an LDAP server overrides the global timeout interval value specified for all LDAP servers.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	

Related Topics

Configuring the Global LDAP Timeout Interval, on page 103
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring the Global LDAP Timeout Interval, on page 103

Configuring TCP Ports

You can configure another TCP port for the LDAP servers if there are conflicts with another application. By default, Cisco NX-OS devices use port 389 for all LDAP requests.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **port** *tcp-port* [**timeout** *seconds*]
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **port** *tcp-port* [**timeout** *seconds*] **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server host 10.10.1.1 port 200 timeout 5`	Specifies the TCP port to use for LDAP messages to the server. The default TCP port is 389. The range is from 1 to 65535. Optionally specifies the timeout interval for the server. The range is from 1 to 60 seconds, and the default timeout is the global value or 5 seconds if a global value is not configured. **Note** The timeout interval value specified for an LDAP server overrides the global timeout interval value specified for all LDAP servers.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98

Configuring LDAP Search Maps

You can configure LDAP search maps to send a search query to the LDAP server. The server searches its database for data meeting the criteria specified in the search map.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ldap search-map** *map-name*
3. (Optional) [**userprofile** | **trustedCert** | **CRLLookup** | **user-certdn-match** | **user-pubkey-match** | **user-switch-bind**] **attribute-name** *attribute-name* **search-filter** *filter* **base-DN** *base-DN-name*
4. (Optional) **exit**
5. (Optional) **show ldap-search-map**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**ldap search-map** *map-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# ldap search-map map1`
	`switch(config-ldap-search-map)#`
		Configures an LDAP search map.

Step 3	(Optional) [**userprofile** | **trustedCert** | **CRLLookup** | **user-certdn-match** | **user-pubkey-match** | **user-switch-bind**] **attribute-name** *attribute-name* **search-filter** *filter* **base-DN** *base-DN-name* **Example:**	Configures the attribute name, search filter, and base-DN for the user profile, trusted certificate, CRL, certificate DN match, public key match, or user-switchgroup lookup search operation. These values are used to send a search query to the LDAP server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-ldap-search-map)# userprofile attribute-name att-name search-filter (&(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)(cn=$userid)) base-DN dc=acme,dc=com`	The *attribute-name* argument is the name of the attribute in the LDAP server that contains the Nexus role definition.
Step 4	(Optional) **exit** **Example:** `switch(config-ldap-search-map)# exit switch(config)#`	Exits LDAP search map configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) **show ldap-search-map** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-search-map`	Displays the configured LDAP search maps.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98

Configuring Periodic LDAP Server Monitoring

You can monitor the availability of LDAP servers. The configuration parameters include the username and password to use for the server, the rootDN to bind to the server to verify its state, and an idle timer. The idle timer specifies the interval in which an LDAP server receives no requests before the Cisco NX-OS device sends out a test packet. You can configure this option to test servers periodically, or you can run a one-time only test.

Note To protect network security, we recommend that you use a username that is not the same as an existing username in the LDAP database.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test rootDN** *root-name* [**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]]
3. [**no**] **ldap-server deadtime** *minutes*
4. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Required: [**no**] **ldap-server host** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *hostname*} **test rootDN** *root-name* [**idle-time** *minutes* | **password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*] | **username** *name* [**password** *password* [**idle-time** *minutes*]]] **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server host 10.10.1.1 test rootDN root1 username user1 password Ur2Gd2BH idle-time 3`	Specifies the parameters for server monitoring. The default username is test, and the default password is Cisco. The default value for the idle timer is 60 minutes, and the valid range is from 1 to 1440 minutes. **Note** We recommend that the user not be an existing user in the LDAP server database.
Step 3	[**no**] **ldap-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server deadtime 5`	Specifies the number of minutes before the Cisco NX-OS device checks an LDAP server that was previously unresponsive. The default value is 0 minutes, and the valid range is from 1 to 60 minutes.
Step 4	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

LDAP Server Configuration Process, on page 97
Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99

Configuring the LDAP Dead-Time Interval

You can configure the dead-time interval for all LDAP servers. The dead-time interval specifies the time that the Cisco NX-OS device waits, after declaring that an LDAP server is dead, before sending out a test packet to determine if the server is now alive.

Note When the dead-time interval is 0 minutes, LDAP servers are not marked as dead even if they are not responding. You can configure the dead-time interval per group.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ldap-server deadtime** *minutes*
3. (Optional) **show ldap-server**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ldap-server deadtime** *minutes* **Example:** `switch(config)# ldap-server deadtime 5`	Configures the global dead-time interval. The default value is 0 minutes. The range is from 1 to 60 minutes.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ldap-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ldap-server`	Displays the LDAP server configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98

Configuring AAA Authorization on LDAP Servers

You can configure the default AAA authorization method for LDAP servers.

Before you begin

Enable LDAP.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **aaa authorization** {**ssh-certificate** | **ssh-publickey**} **default** {**group** *group-list* | **local**}
3. (Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**]
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**aaa authorization** {**ssh-certificate** | **ssh-publickey**} **default** {**group** *group-list* | **local**} **Example:** `switch(config)# aaa authorization ssh-certificate default group LDAPServer1 LDAPServer2`	Configures the default AAA authorization method for the LDAP servers. The **ssh-certificate** keyword configures LDAP or local authorization with certificate authentication, and the **ssh-publickey** keyword configures LDAP or local authorization with the SSH public key. The default authorization is local authorization, which is the list of authorized commands for the user's assigned role. The *group-list* argument consists of a space-delimited list of LDAP server group names. Servers that belong to this group are contacted for AAA authorization. The **local** method uses the local database for authorization.
Step 3	(Optional) **show aaa authorization** [**all**] **Example:** `switch(config)# show aaa authorization`	Displays the AAA authorization configuration. The **all** keyword displays the default values.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling LDAP, on page 98

Monitoring LDAP Servers

You can monitor the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for LDAP server activity.

Before you begin

Configure LDAP servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# show ldap-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Displays the LDAP server statistics.

Related Topics

Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99
Clearing LDAP Server Statistics, on page 111
Clearing LDAP Server Statistics, on page 111

Clearing LDAP Server Statistics

You can display the statistics that the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for LDAP server activity.

Before you begin

Configure LDAP servers on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) **show ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}
2. **clear ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	(Optional) **show ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# show ldap-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Displays the LDAP server statistics.
Step 2	**clear ldap-server statistics** {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **Example:** `switch# clear ldap-server statistics 10.10.1.1`	Clears the LDAP server statistics.

Related Topics

Monitoring LDAP Servers, on page 110
Configuring LDAP Server Hosts, on page 99
Monitoring LDAP Servers, on page 110

Verifying the LDAP Configuration

To display LDAP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks.

Command	Purpose
show running-config ldap [**all**]	Displays the LDAP configuration in the running configuration.
show startup-config ldap	Displays the LDAP configuration in the startup configuration.
show ldap-server	Displays LDAP configuration information.
show ldap-server groups	Displays LDAP server group configuration information.
show ldap-server statistics {*hostname* | *ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*}	Displays LDAP statistics.
show ldap-search-map	Displays information about the configured LDAP attribute maps.

Configuration Examples for LDAP

The following example shows how to configure an LDAP server host and server group:

```
feature ldap
ldap-server host 10.10.2.2 enable-ssl
aaa group server ldap LdapServer
server 10.10.2.2
exit
show ldap-server
show ldap-server groups
```

The following example shows how to configure an LDAP search map:

```
ldap search-map s0
userprofile attribute-name att-name search-filter "
(&(objectClass=Person)(sAMAccountName=$userid))" base-DN dc=acme,dc=com
exit
show ldap-search-map
```

The following example shows how to configure AAA authorization with certificate authentication for an LDAP server:

```
aaa authorization ssh-certificate default group LDAPServer1 LDAPServer2
exit
show aaa authorization
```

The following example shows how you can validate the authentication:

```
failing
test aaa group LdapServer user <user-password>
user has failed authentication
```

```
! working
test aaa group LdapServer user <user-password>
user has been authenticated
```

Where to Go Next

You can now configure AAA authentication methods to include the server groups.

Additional References for LDAP

Related Documents

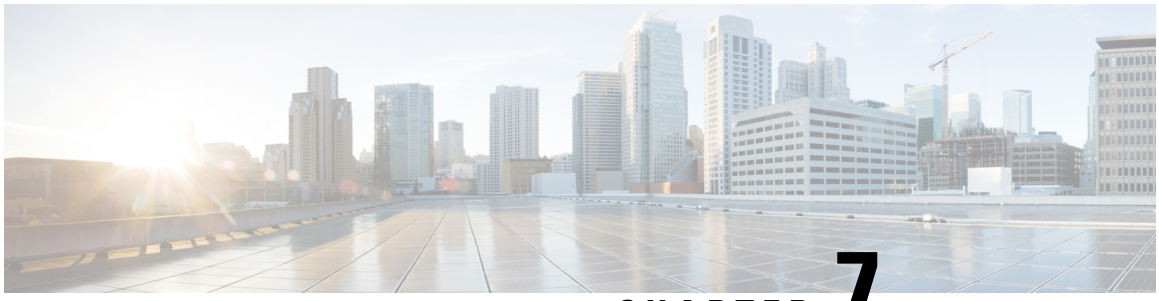
Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*
VRF configuration	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to LDAP	To locate and download the supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 7

Configuring SSH and Telnet

This chapter describes how to configure Secure Shell Protocol (SSH) and Telnet on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About SSH and Telnet

This section includes information about SSH and Telnet.

SSH Server

You can use the SSH server to enable an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco NX-OS device. SSH uses strong encryption for authentication. The SSH server in the Cisco NX-OS software can interoperate with publicly and commercially available SSH clients.

The user authentication mechanisms supported for SSH are RADIUS, TACACS+, LDAP, and the use of locally stored usernames and passwords.

SSH Client

The SSH client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco NX-OS device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco NX-OS device or to any other device that runs the SSH server. This connection provides an outbound

connection that is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for a secure communication over an insecure network.

The SSH client in the Cisco NX-OS software works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers.

SSH Server Keys

SSH requires server keys for secure communications to the Cisco NX-OS device. You can use SSH server keys for the following SSH options:

- SSH version 2 using Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) public-key cryptography
- SSH version 2 using the Digital System Algrorithm (DSA)

Be sure to have an SSH server key-pair with the appropriate version before enabling the SSH service. You can generate the SSH server key-pair according to the SSH client version used. The SSH service accepts the following types of key-pairs for use by SSH version 2:

- The **dsa** option generates the DSA key-pair for the SSH version 2 protocol.
- The **rsa** option generates the RSA key-pair for the SSH version 2 protocol.

By default, the Cisco NX-OS software generates an RSA key using 1024 bits.

SSH supports the following public key formats:

- OpenSSH
- IETF Secure Shell (SECSH)
- Public Key Certificate in Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM)

Caution If you delete all of the SSH keys, you cannot start the SSH services.

SSH Authentication Using Digital Certificates

SSH authentication on Cisco NX-OS devices provide X.509 digital certificate support for host authentication. An X.509 digital certificate is a data item that ensures the origin and integrity of a message. It contains encryption keys for secured communications and is signed by a trusted certification authority (CA) to verify the identity of the presenter. The X.509 digital certificate support provides either DSA or RSA algorithms for authentication.

The certificate infrastructure uses the first certificate that supports the Secure Socket Layer (SSL) and is returned by the security infrastructure, either through a query or a notification. Verification of certificates is successful if the certificates are from any of the trusted CAs configured and if not revoked or expired.

You can configure your device for SSH authentication using an X.509 certificate. If the authentication fails, you are prompted for a password.

Telnet Server

The Telnet protocol enables TCP/IP connections to a host. Telnet allows a user at one site to establish a TCP connection to a login server at another site and then passes the keystrokes from one device to the other. Telnet can accept either an IP address or a domain name as the remote device address.

The Telnet server is disabled by default on the Cisco NX-OS device.

Licensing Requirements for SSH and Telnet

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	SSH and Telnet require no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for SSH and Telnet

Make sure that you have configured IP on a Layer 3 interface, out-of-band on the mgmt 0 interface, or inband on an Ethernet interface.

Guidelines and Limitations for SSH and Telnet

SSH and Telnet have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The Cisco NX-OS software supports only SSH version 2 (SSHv2).
- Due to a Poodle vulnerability, SSLv3 is no longer supported.
- IPSG is not supported on the following:
  - The last six 40-Gb physical ports on the Cisco Nexus 9372PX, 9372TX, and 9332PQ switches
  - All 40G physical ports on the Cisco Nexus 9396PX, 9396TX, and 93128TX switches
- You can configure your device for SSH authentication using an X.509 certificate. If the authentication fails, you are prompted for a password.
- The SFTP server feature does not support the regular SFTP **chown** and **chgrp** commands.
- When the SFTP server is enabled, only the admin user can use SFTP to access the device.
- SSH public and private keys imported into user accounts that are remotely authenticated through a AAA protocol (such as RADIUS or TACACS+) for the purpose of SSH Passwordless File Copy will not persist when the Nexus device is reloaded unless a local user account with the same name as the remote user account is configured on the device before the SSH keys are imported.

- SSH timeout period must be longer than the time of the tac-pac generation time. Otherwise, the VSH log might show %VSHD-2-VSHD_SYSLOG_EOL_ERR error. Ideally, set to 0 (infinity) before collecting tac-pac or showtech.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Default Settings for SSH and Telnet

This table lists the default settings for SSH and Telnet parameters.

Table 9: Default SSH and Telnet Parameters

Parameters	Default
SSH server	Enabled
SSH server key	RSA key generated with 1024 bits
RSA key bits for generation	1024
Telnet server	Disabled
Telnet port number	23
Maximum number of SSH login attempts	3
SCP server	Disabled
SFTP server	Disabled

Configuring SSH

This section describes how to configure SSH.

Generating SSH Server Keys

You can generate an SSH server key based on your security requirements. The default SSH server key is an RSA key that is generated using 1024 bits.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no feature ssh**
3. **feature ssh**
4. **exit**

5. (Optional) **show ssh key** [**dsa** | **rsa** |] []
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no feature ssh** **Example:** `switch(config)# no feature ssh`	Disables SSH.
Step 3	**feature ssh** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature ssh`	Enables SSH.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show ssh key** [**dsa**	**rsa**	] [] **Example:** `switch# show ssh key`	Displays the SSH server keys.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Specifying the SSH Public Keys for User Accounts

You can configure an SSH public key to log in using an SSH client without being prompted for a password. You can specify the SSH public key in one of these formats:

- OpenSSH format
- IETF SECSH format

Specifying the SSH Public Keys in IETF SECSH Format

You can specify the SSH public keys in IETF SECSH format for user accounts.

Before you begin

Generate an SSH public key in IETF SCHSH format.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **copy** *server-file* **bootflash:** *filename*
2. **configure terminal**
3. **username** *username* **sshkey file bootflash:** *filename*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show user-account**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**copy** *server-file* **bootflash:** *filename* **Example:** `switch# copy tftp://10.10.1.1/secsh_file.pub bootflash:secsh_file.pub`	Downloads the file containing the SSH key in IETF SECSH format from a server. The server can be FTP, secure copy (SCP), secure FTP (SFTP), or TFTP.

Step 2	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 3	**username** *username* **sshkey file bootflash:** *filename* **Example:** `switch(config)# username User1 sshkey file bootflash:secsh_file.pub`	Configures the SSH public key in IETF SECSH format.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show user-account** **Example:** `switch# show user-account`	Displays the user account configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Specifying the SSH Public Keys in OpenSSH Format

You can specify the SSH public keys in OpenSSH format for user accounts.

Before you begin

Generate an SSH public key in OpenSSH format.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **username** *username* **sshkey** *ssh-key*
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show user-account**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**username** *username* **sshkey** *ssh-key*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# username User1 sshkey`
	`ssh-rsa`
	`AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAy19oF6QaZl9G+3flXswK3OiW4H7YyUyuA50rv7gsEPj`
	`hOBYmsi6PAVKui1nIf/DQhum+lJNqJP/eLowb7ubO+lVKRXFY/G+lJNIQW3g9igG30c6k6+`
	`XVn+NjnI1B7ihvpVh7dLddMOXwOnXHYshXmSiH3UD/vKyziEh5S4Tplx8=`
		Configures the SSH public key in OpenSSH format.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show user-account** **Example:** `switch# show user-account`	Displays the user account configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring a Maximum Number of SSH Login Attempts

You can configure the maximum number of SSH login attempts. If the user exceeds the maximum number of permitted attempts, the session disconnects.

Note The total number of login attempts includes attempts through public-key authentication, certificate-based authentication, and password-based authentication. If public-key authentication is enabled, it takes priority. If only certificate-based and password-based authentication are enabled, certificate-based authentication takes priority. If you exceed the configured number of login attempts through all of these methods, a message appears indicating that too many authentication failures have occurred.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ssh login-attempts** *number*
3. (Optional) **show running-config security all**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**ssh login-attempts** *number* **Example:** `switch(config)# ssh login-attempts 5`	Configures the maximum number of times that a user can attempt to log into an SSH session. The default maximum number of login attempts is 3. The range is from 1 to 10. **Note** The **no** form of this command removes the previous login attempts value and sets the maximum number of login attempts to the default value of 3.
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config security all** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config security all`	Displays the configured maximum number of SSH login attempts.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	(Optional) Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Starting SSH Sessions

You can start SSH sessions using IPv4 or IPv6 to connect to remote devices from the Cisco NX-OS device.

Before you begin

Obtain the hostname for the remote device and, if needed, the username on the remote device.

Enable the SSH server on the remote device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **ssh** [*username* **@**]{*ipv4-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*]
2. **ssh6** [*username* **@**]{*ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**ssh** [*username* **@**]{*ipv4-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] **Example:** `switch# ssh 10.10.1.1`	Creates an SSH IPv4 session to a remote device using IPv4. The default VRF is the default VRF.
Step 2	**ssh6** [*username* **@**]{*ipv6-address* | *hostname*} [**vrf** *vrf-name*] **Example:** `switch# ssh6 HostA`	Creates an SSH IPv6 session to a remote device using IPv6.

Starting SSH Sessions from Boot Mode

You can start SSH sessions from the boot mode of the Cisco NX-OS device to connect to remote devices.

Before you begin

Obtain the hostname for the remote device and, if needed, the username on the remote device.

Enable the SSH server on the remote device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **ssh** [*username* **@**]*hostname*
2. **exit**
3. **copy scp:**//[*username* **@**]*hostname*/*filepath directory*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**ssh** [*username* **@**]*hostname* **Example:** `switch(boot)# ssh user1@10.10.1.1`	Creates an SSH session to a remote device from the boot mode of the Cisco NX-OS device. The default VRF is always used.
Step 2	**exit** **Example:** `switch(boot)# exit`	Exits boot mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	**copy scp:**//[*username* **@**]*hostname*/*filepath directory* **Example:** `switch# copy scp://user1@10.10.1.1/users abc`	Copies a file from the Cisco NX-OS device to a remote device using the Secure Copy Protocol (SCP). The default VRF is always used.

Configuring SSH Passwordless File Copy

You can copy files from a Cisco NX-OS device to a secure copy (SCP) or secure FTP (SFTP) server without a password. To do so, you must create an RSA or DSA identity that consists of public and private keys for authentication with SSH.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **username** *username* **keypair generate** {**rsa** [*bits* [**force**]] | **dsa** [**force**]}
3. (Optional) **show username** *username* **keypair**
4. **username** *username* **keypair export** {**bootflash:** *filename* | **volatile:** *filename*} {**rsa** | **dsa**} [**force**]
5. **username** *username* **keypair import** {**bootflash:** *filename* | **volatile:** *filename*} {**rsa** | **dsa**} [**force**]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **username** *username* **keypair generate** {**rsa** [*bits* [**force**]]	**dsa** [**force**]} **Example:** `switch(config)# username user1 keypair generate rsa 2048 force`	Generates the SSH public and private keys and stores them in the home directory ($HOME/.ssh) of the Cisco NX-OS device for the specified user. The Cisco NX-OS device uses the keys to communicate with the SSH server on the remote machine. The *bits* argument is the number of bits used to generate the key. The range is from 768 to 2048. The default value is 1024. Use the **force** keyword to replace an existing key. The SSH keys are not generated if the **force** keyword is omitted and SSH keys are already present.
Step 3	(Optional) **show username** *username* **keypair** **Example:** `switch(config)# show username user1 keypair`	Displays the public key for the specified user. **Note** For security reasons, this command does not show the private key.
Step 4	Required: **username** *username* **keypair export** {**bootflash:** *filename*	**volatile:** *filename*} {**rsa**	**dsa**} [**force**]	Exports the public and private keys from the home directory of the Cisco NX-OS device to the specified bootflash or volatile directory.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: `switch(config)# username user1 keypair export bootflash:key_rsa rsa`	Use the **force** keyword to replace an existing key. The SSH keys are not exported if the **force** keyword is omitted and SSH keys are already present. To export the generated key pair, you are prompted to enter a passphrase that encrypts the private key. The private key is exported as the file that you specify, and the public key is exported with the same filename followed by a .pub extension. You can now copy this key pair to any Cisco NX-OS device and use SCP or SFTP to copy the public key file (*.pub) to the home directory of the server. **Note** For security reasons, this command can be executed only from global configuration mode.
Step 5	Required: **username** *username* **keypair import** {**bootflash:** *filename* | **volatile:** *filename*} {**rsa** | **dsa**} [**force**] **Example:** `switch(config)# username user1 keypair import bootflash:key_rsa rsa`	Imports the exported public and private keys from the specified bootflash or volatile directory to the home directory of the Cisco NX-OS device. Use the **force** keyword to replace an existing key. The SSH keys are not imported if the **force** keyword is omitted and SSH keys are already present. To import the generated key pair, you are prompted to enter a passphrase that decrypts the private key. The private key is imported as the file that you specify, and the public key is imported with the same filename followed by a .pub extension. **Note** For security reasons, this command can be executed only from global configuration mode. **Note** Only the users whose keys are configured on the server are able to access the server without a password.

What to do next

On the SCP or SFTP server, use the following command to append the public key stored in the *.pub file (for example, key_rsa.pub) to the authorized_keys file:

$ cat key_rsa.pub >> $HOME/.ssh/ authorized_keys

You can now copy files from the Cisco NX-OS device to the server without a password using standard SSH and SCP commands.

Configuring SCP and SFTP Servers

You can configure an SCP or SFTP server on the Cisco NX-OS device in order to copy files to and from a remote device. After you enable the SCP or SFTP server, you can execute an SCP or SFTP command on the remote device to copy the files to or from the Cisco NX-OS device.

Note The arcfour and blowfish cipher options are not supported for the SCP server.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **feature scp-server**
3. [**no**] **feature sftp-server**
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show running-config security**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **feature scp-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature scp-server`	Enables or disables the SCP server on the Cisco NX-OS device.
Step 3	Required: [**no**] **feature sftp-server** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature sftp-server`	Enables or disables the SFTP server on the Cisco NX-OS device.

Step 4	Required: **exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show running-config security** **Example:** `switch# show running-config security`	Displays the configuration status of the SCP and SFTP servers.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Clearing SSH Hosts

When you download a file from a server using SCP or SFTP, or when you start an SSH session from this device to a remote host, you establish a trusted SSH relationship with that server. You can clear the list of trusted SSH servers for your user account.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **clear ssh hosts**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**clear ssh hosts** **Example:** `switch# clear ssh hosts`	Clears the SSH host sessions and the known host file.

Disabling the SSH Server

By default, the SSH server is enabled on the Cisco NX-OS device. You can disable the SSH server to prevent SSH access to the switch.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no feature ssh**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show ssh server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no feature ssh** **Example:** `switch(config)# no feature ssh`	Disables SSH.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **show ssh server** **Example:** `switch# show ssh server`	Displays the SSH server configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Deleting SSH Server Keys

You can delete SSH server keys on the Cisco NX-OS device after you disable the SSH server.

Note To reenable SSH, you must first generate an SSH server key.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no feature ssh**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show ssh key**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no feature ssh** **Example:** `switch(config)# no feature ssh`	Disables SSH.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show ssh key** **Example:** `switch# show ssh key`	Displays the SSH server key configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Generating SSH Server Keys, on page 118

Clearing SSH Sessions

You can clear SSH sessions from the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show users**
2. **clear line** *vty-line*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show users** **Example:** `switch# show users`	Displays user session information.
Step 2	**clear line** *vty-line* **Example:** `switch(config)# clear line pts/12`	Clears a user SSH session.

Configuring Telnet

This section describes how to configure Telnet on the Cisco NX-OS device.

Enabling the Telnet Server

You can enable the Telnet server on the Cisco NX-OS device. By default, the Telnet server is disabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **feature telnet**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show telnet server**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**feature telnet** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature telnet`	Enables the Telnet server. The default is disabled.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show telnet server** **Example:** `switch# show telnet server`	Displays the Telnet server configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Starting Telnet Sessions to Remote Devices

You can start Telnet sessions to connect to remote devices from the Cisco NX-OS device. You can start Telnet sessions using either IPv4 or IPv6.

Before you begin

Obtain the hostname or IP address for the remote device and, if needed, the username on the remote device.

Enable the Telnet server on the Cisco NX-OS device.

Enable the Telnet server on the remote device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **telnet** {*ipv4-address* | *host-name*} [*port-number*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*]
2. **telnet6** {*ipv6-address* | *host-name*} [*port-number*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**telnet** {*ipv4-address* | *host-name*} [*port-number*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*] **Example:** `switch# telnet 10.10.1.1`	Starts a Telnet session to a remote device using IPv4. The default port number is 23. The range is from 1 to 65535. The default VRF is the default VRF.
Step 2	**telnet6** {*ipv6-address* | *host-name*} [*port-number*] [**vrf** *vrf-name*] **Example:** `switch# telnet6 2001:0DB8::ABCD:1 vrf management`	Starts a Telnet session to a remote device using IPv6. The default port number is 23. The range is from 1 to 65535. The default VRF is the default VRF.

Related Topics

Enabling the Telnet Server, on page 129

Clearing Telnet Sessions

You can clear Telnet sessions from the Cisco NX-OS device.

Before you begin

Enable the Telnet server on the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show users**
2. **clear line** *vty-line*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show users** **Example:** `switch# show users`	Displays user session information.
Step 2	**clear line** *vty-line* **Example:** `switch(config)# clear line pts/12`	Clears a user Telnet session.

Verifying the SSH and Telnet Configuration

To display the SSH and Telnet configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show ssh key [**dsa** | **rsa**] []	Displays the SSH server keys.
show running-config security [**all**]	Displays the SSH and user account configuration in the running configuration. The **all** keyword displays the default values for the SSH and user accounts.
show ssh server	Displays the SSH server configuration.
show telnet server	Displays the Telnet server configuration.
show username *username* **keypair**	Displays the public key for the specified user.
show user-account	Displays configured user account details.
show users	Displays the users logged into the device.

Configuration Example for SSH

The following example shows how to configure SSH with an OpenSSH key:

Step 1 Disable the SSH server.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no feature ssh
```

Step 2 Generate an SSH server key.

Example:

```
switch(config)# ssh key rsa
generating rsa key(1024 bits)......
generated rsa key
```

Step 3 Enable the SSH server.

Example:

```
switch(config)# feature ssh
```

Step 4 Display the SSH server key.

Example:

```
switch(config)# show ssh key
rsa Keys generated:Sat Sep 29 00:10:39 2013

ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAvWhEBsF55oaPHNDBnpXOTw6+/OdHoLJZKr
+MZm99n2U0ChzZG4svRWmHuJY4PeDWl0e5yE3g3EO3pjDDmt923siNiv5aSga60K36lr39
HmXL6VgpRVn1XQFiBwn4na+H1d3Q0hDt+uWEA0tka2uOtXlDhliEmn4HVXOjGhFhoNE=
```

```
bitcount:1024
fingerprint:
51:6d:de:1c:c3:29:50:88:df:cc:95:f0:15:5d:9a:df
***********************************
could not retrieve dsa key information
***********************************
```

Step 5 Specify the SSH public key in OpenSSH format.

Example:

```
switch(config)# username User1 sshkey ssh-rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAy19oF6QaZl9G+3f1XswK3OiW4H7YyUyuA50r
v7gsEPjhOBYmsi6PAVKui1nIf/DQhum+lJNqJP/eLowb7ubO+lVKRXFY/G+lJNIQ
W3g9igG30c6k6+XVn+NjnI1B7ihvpVh7dLddMOXwOnXHYshXmSiH3UD/vKyziEh5
4Tplx8=
```

Step 6 Save the configuration.

Example:

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuration Example for SSH Passwordless File Copy

The following example shows how to copy files from a Cisco NX-OS device to a secure copy (SCP) or secure FTP (SFTP) server without a password:

Step 1 Generate the SSH public and private keys and store them in the home directory of the Cisco NX-OS device for the specified user.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username admin keypair generate rsa
generating rsa key(1024 bits)......
generated rsa key
```

Step 2 Display the public key for the specified user.

Example:

```
switch(config)# show username admin keypair

***********************************

rsa Keys generated: Thu Jul  9 11:10:29 2013

ssh-rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAxWmjJT+oQhIcvnrMbx2BmD0P8boZElTfJ
Fx9fexWp6rOiztlwODtehnjadWc6A+DE2DvYNvqsrU9TBypYDPQkR/+Y6cKubyFW
VxSBG/NHztQc3+QC1zdkIxGNJbEHyFoajzNEO8LLOVFIMCZ2Td7gxUGRZc+fbq
S33GZsCAX6v0=

bitcount:262144
```

```
fingerprint:
8d:44:ee:6c:ca:0b:44:95:36:d0:7d:f2:b5:78:74:7d
************************************

could not retrieve dsa key information
************************************
```

Step 3 Export the public and private keys from the home directory of the Cisco NX-OS device to the specified bootflash directory.

Example:

```
switch(config)# username admin keypair export bootflash:key_rsa rsa
Enter Passphrase:
switch(config)# dir
.
.
.
        951     Jul 09 11:13:59 2013  key_rsa
        221     Jul 09 11:14:00 2013  key_rsa.pub
.
.
```

Step 4 After copying these two files to another Cisco NX-OS device using the **copy scp** or **copy sftp** command, import them to the home directory of the Cisco NX-OS device.

Example:

```
switch(config)# username admin keypair import bootflash:key_rsa rsa
Enter Passphrase:
switch(config)# show username admin keypair
************************************

rsa Keys generated: Thu Jul  9 11:10:29 2013

ssh-rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAxWmjJT+oQhIcvnrMbx2BmD0P8boZElTfJ
Fx9fexWp6rOiztlwODtehnjadWc6A+DE2DvYNvqsrU9TBypYDPQkR/+Y6cKubyFW
VxSBG/NHztQc3+QC1zdkIxGNJbEHyFoajzNEO8LLOVFIMCZ2Td7gxUGRZc+fbq
S33GZsCAX6v0=

bitcount:262144
fingerprint:
8d:44:ee:6c:ca:0b:44:95:36:d0:7d:f2:b5:78:74:7d
************************************

could not retrieve dsa key information
************************************
switch(config)#
```

Step 5 On the SCP or SFTP server, append the public key stored in key_rsa.pub to the authorized_keys file.

Example:

```
$ cat key_rsa.pub >> $HOME/.ssh/ authorized_keys
```

You can now copy files from the Cisco NX-OS device to the server without a password using standard SSH and SCP commands.

Step 6 (Optional) Repeat this procedure for the DSA keys.

Additional References for SSH and Telnet

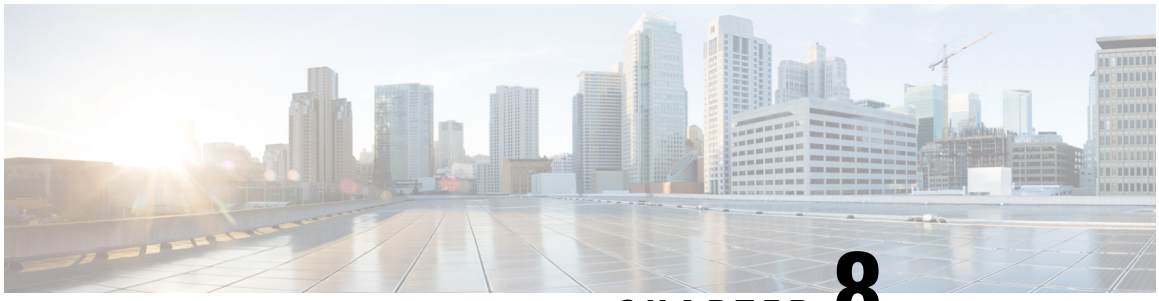
This section describes additional information related to implementing SSH and Telnet.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*
VRF configuration	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to SSH and Telnet	To locate and download supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 8

Configuring User Accounts and RBAC

This chapter describes how to configure user accounts and role-based access control (RBAC) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About User Accounts and RBAC

You can create and manage users accounts and assign roles that limit access to operations on the Cisco NX-OS device. RBAC allows you to define the rules for an assign role that restrict the authorization that the user has to access management operations.

User Accounts

You can configure up to a maximum of 256 user accounts. By default, the user account does not expire unless you explicitly configure it to expire. The expire option determines the date when the user account is disabled.

The following words are reserved and cannot be used to configure users: bin, daemon, adm, lp, sync, shutdown, halt, mail, news, uucp, operator, games, gopher, ftp, nobody, nscd, mailnull, root, rpc, rpcuser, xfs, gdm, mtsuser, ftpuser, man, and sys.

Note User passwords are not displayed in the configuration files.

Caution Usernames must begin with an alphanumeric character and can contain only these special characters: (+ = . _ \ -). The # and ! symbols are not supported. If the username contains characters that are not allowed, the specified user is unable to log in.

Characteristics of Strong Passwords

A strong password has the following characteristics:

- Is at least eight characters long
- Does not contain many consecutive characters (such as abcd)
- Does not contain many repeating characters (such as aaabbb)
- Does not contain dictionary words
- Does not contain proper names
- Contains both uppercase and lowercase characters
- Contains numbers

The following are examples of strong passwords:

- If2CoM18
- 2004AsdfLkj30
- Cb1955S21

Note Clear text passwords cannot contain dollar signs ($) or spaces anywhere in the password. Also, they cannot include these special characters at the beginning of the password: quotation marks (" or '), vertical bars (|), or right angle brackets (>).

Note All printable ASCII characters are supported in the password string if they are enclosed in quotation marks.

If a password is trivial (such as a short, easy-to-decipher password), the Cisco NX-OS software will reject your password configuration if password-strength checking is enabled. Be sure to configure a strong password as shown in the sample configuration. Passwords are case sensitive.

Related Topics

Enabling Password-Strength Checking, on page 141

User Roles

User roles contain rules that define the operations allowed for the user who is assigned the role. Each user role can contain multiple rules, and each user can have multiple roles. For example, if role1 allows access

only to configuration operations, and role2 allows access only to debug operations, then users who belong to both role1 and role2 can access configuration and debug operations. You can also limit access to specific virtual routing and forwarding instances (VRFs), VLANs, and interfaces.

The Cisco NX-OS software provides the following user roles:

- network-admin—Complete read-and-write access to the entire Cisco NX-OS device
- network-operator or vdc-operator—Complete read access to the entire Cisco NX-OS device

Note

- The Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches do not support multiple VDCs; however, the vdc-operator role is available and has the same privileges and limitations as the network-operator role.
- The Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches support a single VDC due to which the vdc-admin has the same privileges and limitations as the network-admin.

Note You cannot change the user roles.

Note Some **show** commands may be hidden from network-operator users. In addition, some non- **show** commands (such as **telnet**) may be available for this user role.

By default, the user accounts without an administrator role can access only the **show** , **exit** , **end** , and **configure terminal** commands. You can add rules to allow users to configure features.

Note If you belong to multiple roles, you can execute a combination of all the commands permitted by these roles. Access to a command takes priority over being denied access to a command. For example, suppose a user has RoleA, which denied access to the configuration commands. However, the user also has RoleB, which has access to the configuration commands. In this case, the user has access to the configuration commands.

User Role Rules

The rule is the basic element of a role. A rule defines what operations the role allows the user to perform. You can apply rules for the following parameters:

Command
A command or group of commands defined in a regular expression.

Feature
A command or group of commands defined in a regular expression.

Feature group
Default or user-defined group of features.

OID
An SNMP object identifier (OID).

The command, feature, and feature group parameters create a hierarchical relationship. The most basic control parameter is the command. The next control parameter is the feature, which represents all commands associated with the feature. The last control parameter is the feature group. The feature group combines related features and allows you to easily manage the rules. The Cisco NX-OS software also supports the predefined feature group L3 that you can use.

SNMP OID is supported for RBAC. You can configure a read-only or read-and-write rule for an SNMP OID.

You can configure up to 256 rules for each role. The user-specified rule number determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

Licensing Requirements for User Accounts and RBAC

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	User accounts and RBAC require no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts and RBAC

User accounts and RBAC have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can add up to 256 rules to a user role.
- You can add up to 64 user-defined feature groups in addition to the default feature group, L3.
- You can configure up to 256 users.
- You can assign a maximum of 64 user roles to a user account.
- If you have a user account configured on the local Cisco NX-OS device that has the same name as a remote user account on an AAA server, the Cisco NX-OS software applies the user roles for the local user account to the remote user, not the user roles configured on the AAA server.
- You cannot delete the default admin and SNMP user accounts.
- You cannot remove the default user roles from the default admin user accounts.
- The network-operator role cannot run the **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands.
- The Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches support a single VDC due to which the vdc-admin has the same privileges and limitations as the network-admin.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Default Settings for User Accounts and RBAC

This table lists the default settings for user accounts and RBAC parameters.

Table 10: Default User Accounts and RBAC Parameters

Parameters	Default
User account password	Undefined
User account expiry date	None
User account role	Network-operator if the creating user has the network-admin role
Default user role	Network-operator
Interface policy	All interfaces are accessible
VLAN policy	All VLANs are accessible
VRF policy	All VRFs are accessible
Feature group	L3

Enabling Password-Strength Checking

You can enable password-strength checking which prevents you from creating weak passwords for user accounts.

Note When you enable password-strength checking, the Cisco NX-OS software does not check the strength of existing passwords.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **password strength-check**
3. **exit**
4. (Optional) **show password strength-check**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure terminal** **Example:**	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# configure terminal` `switch(config)#`	
Step 2	**password strength-check** **Example:** `switch(config)# password strength-check`	Enables password-strength checking. The default is enabled. You can disable password-strength checking by using the **no** form of this command.

Step 3	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 4	(Optional) **show password strength-check** **Example:** `switch# show password strength-check`	Displays the password-strength check configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Characteristics of Strong Passwords, on page 138

Configuring User Accounts

You can create a maximum of 256 user accounts on a Cisco NX-OS device. User accounts have the following attributes:

- Username
- Password
- Expiry date
- User roles

You can enter the password in clear text format or encrypted format. The Cisco NX-OS password encrypts clear text passwords before saving them to the running configuration. Encrypted format passwords are saved to the running configuration without further encryption.

User accounts can have a maximum of 64 user roles. The user can determine what commands are available by using the command-line interface (CLI) context sensitive help utility.

Note Changes to user account attributes do not take effect until the user logs in and creates a new session.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. (Optional) **show role**
3. **username** *user-id* [**password** [**0** | **5**] *password*] [**expire** *date*] [**role** *role-name*]
4. **username** *user-id* **ssh-cert-dn** *dn-name* {**dsa** | **rsa**}
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show user-account**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	(Optional) **show role** **Example:** `switch(config)# show role`	Displays the user roles available. You can configure other user roles, if necessary.
Step 3	**username** *user-id* [**password** [**0** | **5**] *password*] [**expire** *date*] [**role** *role-name*] **Example:** `switch(config)# username NewUser password 4Ty18Rnt`	Configures a user account. The *user-id* argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum length of 28 characters. Valid characters are uppercase letters A through Z, lowercase letters a through z, numbers 0 through 9, hyphen (-), period (.), underscore (_), plus sign (+), and equal sign (=). The at symbol (@) is supported in remote usernames but not in local usernames. Usernames must begin with an alphanumeric character. The default password is undefined. The **0** option indicates that the password is clear text, and the **5** option indicates that the password is encrypted. The default is **0** (clear text). **Note** If you do not specify a password, the user might not be able to log in to the Cisco NX-OS device. **Note** If you create a user account with the encrypted password option, the corresponding SNMP user will not be created. The **expire** *date* option format is YYYY-MM-DD. The default is no expiry date. User accounts can have a maximum of 64 user roles.
Step 4	**username** *user-id* **ssh-cert-dn** *dn-name* {**dsa** | **rsa**} **Example:**	Specifies an SSH X.509 certificate distinguished name and DSA or RSA algorithm to use for authentication for an existing user account. The distinguished name can be up to

	Command or Action	Purpose

	`switch(config)# username NewUser ssh-cert-dn "/CN = NewUser, OU = Cisco Demo, O = Cisco, C = US" rsa`
	Example:
	`switch(config)# username jsmith ssh-cert-dn "/O = ABCcompany, OU = ABC1, emailAddress = jsmith@ABCcompany.com, L = Metropolis, ST = New York, C = US, CN = jsmith" rsa`
		512 characters and must follow the format shown in the examples. Make sure the email address and state are configured as emailAddress and ST, respectively.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show user-account** **Example:** `switch# show user-account`	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring Roles, on page 144
Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Configuring Roles

This section describes how to configure user roles.

Creating User Roles and Rules

You can configure up to 64 user roles. Each user role can have up to 256 rules. You can assign a user role to more than one user account.

The rule number that you specify determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

Note Regardless of the read-write rule configured for a user role, some commands can be executed only through the predefined network-admin role.

Before you begin

If you want to distribute the user role configuration, enable user role configuration distribution on all Cisco NX-OS devices to which you want the configuration distributed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **role name** *role-name*
3. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} **command** *command-string*
4. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**}
5. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**} **feature** *feature-name*
6. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**} **feature-group** *group-name*
7. **rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**} **oid** *snmp_oid_name*
8. (Optional) **description** *text*
9. **exit**
10. (Optional) **show role**
11. (Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
12. (Optional) **role commit**
13. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**role name** *role-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role name UserA`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode. The *role-name* argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Step 3	**rule** *number* {**deny**	**permit**} **command** *command-string* **Example:** `switch(config-role)# rule 1 deny command clear users`	Configures a command rule. The *command-string* argument can contain spaces and regular expressions. For example, interface ethernet includes all Ethernet interfaces. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 4	**rule** *number* {**deny**	**permit**} {**read**	**read-write**} **Example:** `switch(config-role)# rule 2 deny read-write`	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for all operations.
Step 5	**rule** *number* {**deny**	**permit**} {**read**	**read-write**} **feature** *feature-name* **Example:**	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature. Use the **show role feature** command to display a list of features.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-role)# rule 3 permit read feature router-bgp`	Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 6	**rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**} **feature-group** *group-name* **Example:** `switch(config-role)# rule 4 deny read-write feature-group L3`	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature group. Use the **show role feature-group** command to display a list of feature groups. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 7	**rule** *number* {**deny** | **permit**} {**read** | **read-write**} **oid** *snmp_oid_name* **Example:** `switch(config-role)# rule 5 deny read-write oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.9`	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for an SNMP object identifier (OID). You can enter up to 32 elements for the OID. This command can be used to allow SNMP-based performance monitoring tools to poll devices but restrict their access to system-intensive branches such as the IP routing table, MAC address tables, specific MIBs, and so on. **Note** The deepest OID can be at the scalar level or at the table root level. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 8	(Optional) **description** *text* **Example:** `switch(config-role)# description This role does not allow users to use clear commands`	Configures the role description. You can include spaces in the description.

Step 9	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits role configuration mode.

Step 10	(Optional) **show role** **Example:** `switch(config)# show role`	Displays the user role configuration.
Step 11	(Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show role pending`	Displays the user role configuration pending for distribution.
Step 12	(Optional) **role commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# role commit`	Applies the user role configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.
Step 13	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Creating Feature Groups

You can create custom feature groups to add to the default list of features provided by the Cisco NX-OS software. These groups contain one or more of the features. You can create up to 64 feature groups.

Note You cannot change the default feature group L3.

Before you begin

If you want to distribute the user role configuration, enable user role configuration distribution on all Cisco NX-OS devices to which you want the configuration distributed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **role feature-group name** *group-name*
3. **feature** *feature-name*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show role feature-group**
6. (Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
7. (Optional) **role commit**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**role feature-group name** *group-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role feature-group name GroupA`
	`switch(config-role-featuregrp)#`
		Specifies a user role feature group and enters role feature group configuration mode.
		The *group-name* argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum length of 32 characters.

Step 3	**feature** *feature-name* **Example:** `switch(config-role-featuregrp)# feature radius`	Specifies a feature for the feature group. Repeat this command for as many features as needed. **Note** Use the **show role component** command to display a list of features.
Step 4	**exit** **Example:**	Exits role feature group configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-role-featuregrp)# exit` `switch(config)#`	
Step 5	(Optional) **show role feature-group** **Example:** `switch(config)# show role feature-group`	Displays the role feature group configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config)# show role pending`	Displays the user role configuration pending for distribution.
Step 7	(Optional) **role commit** **Example:** `switch(config)# role commit`	Applies the user role configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing User Role Interface Policies

You can change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access. By default, a user role allows access to all interfaces.

Before you begin

Create one or more user roles.

If you want to distribute the user role configuration, enable user role configuration distribution on all Cisco NX-OS devices to which you want the configuration distributed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **role name** *role-name*
3. **interface policy deny**
4. **permit interface** *interface-list*
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show role**
7. (Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
8. (Optional) **role commit**
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**role name** *role-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role name UserA`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.

Step 3	**interface policy deny**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role)# interface policy deny`
	`switch(config-role-interface)#`
		Enters role interface policy configuration mode.

Step 4	**permit interface** *interface-list* **Example:** `switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface ethernet 2/1-4`	Specifies a list of interfaces that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many interfaces as needed.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role-interface)# exit`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Exits role interface policy configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show role** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# show role`	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config-role)# show role pending`	Displays the user role configuration pending for distribution.
Step 8	(Optional) **role commit** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# role commit`	Applies the user role configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Changing User Role VLAN Policies

You can change a user role VLAN policy to limit the VLANs that the user can access. By default, a user role allows access to all VLANs.

Before you begin

Create one or more user roles.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **role name** *role-name*
3. **vlan policy deny**
4. **permit vlan** *vlan-list*
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show role**
7. (Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
8. (Optional) **role commit**
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**role name** *role-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role name UserA`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.

Step 3	**vlan policy deny**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role)# vlan policy deny`
	`switch(config-role-vlan)#`
		Enters role VLAN policy configuration mode.

Step 4	**permit vlan** *vlan-list* **Example:** `switch(config-role-vlan)# permit vlan 1-4`	Specifies a range of VLANs that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many VLANs as needed.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role-vlan)# exit`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Exits role VLAN policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	(Optional) **show role** **Example:** `switch(config)# show role`	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config-role)# show role pending`	Displays the user role configuration pending for distribution.
Step 8	(Optional) **role commit** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# role commit`	Applies the user role configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Changing User Role VRF Policies

You can change a user role VRF policy to limit the VRFs that the user can access. By default, a user role allows access to all VRFs.

Before you begin

Create one or more user roles.

If you want to distribute the user role configuration, enable user role configuration distribution on all Cisco NX-OS devices to which you want the configuration distributed.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **role name** *role-name*
3. **vrf policy deny**
4. **permit vrf** *vrf-name*
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show role**
7. (Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**}
8. (Optional) **role commit**
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**role name** *role-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# role name UserA`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.

Step 3	**vrf policy deny**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role)# vrf policy deny`
	`switch(config-role-vrf)#`
		Enters role VRF policy configuration mode.

Step 4	**permit vrf** *vrf-name* **Example:** `switch(config-role-vrf)# permit vrf vrf1`	Specifies the VRF that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many VRFs as needed.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-role-vrf)# exit`
	`switch(config-role)#`
		Exits role VRF policy configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show role** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# show role`	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **show role** {**pending** | **pending-diff**} **Example:** `switch(config-role)# show role pending`	Displays the user role configuration pending for distribution.
Step 8	(Optional) **role commit** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# role commit`	Applies the user role configuration changes in the temporary database to the running configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-role)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Creating User Roles and Rules, on page 144

Verifying User Accounts and RBAC Configuration

To display user account and RBAC configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show cli syntax roles network-admin	Displays the syntax of the commands that the network-admin role can use.
show cli syntax roles network-operator	Displays the syntax of the commands that the network-operator role can use.
show role	Displays the user role configuration.
show role feature	Displays the feature list.
show role feature-group	Displays the feature group configuration.
show startup-config security	Displays the user account configuration in the startup configuration.
show running-config security [**all**]	Displays the user account configuration in the running configuration. The **all** keyword displays the default values for the user accounts.
show user-account	Displays user account information.

Configuration Examples for User Accounts and RBAC

The following example shows how to configure a user role:

```
role name User-role-A
  rule 2 permit read-write feature bgp
  rule 1 deny command clear *
```

The following example shows how to create a user role that can configure an interface to enable and show BGP and show EIGRP:

```
role name iftest
   rule 1 permit command config t; interface *; bgp *
   rule 2 permit read-write feature bgp
   rule 3 permit read feature eigrp
```

In the above example, rule 1 allows you to configure BGP on an interface, rule 2 allows you to configure the **config bgp** command and enable the exec-level **show** and **debug** commands for BGP, and rule 3 allows you to enable the exec-level **show** and **debug eigrp** commands.

The following example shows how to configure a user role that can configure only a specific interface:

```
role name Int_Eth2-3_only
  rule 1 permit command configure terminal; interface *
  interface policy deny
    permit interface Ethernet2/3
```

The following example shows how to configure a user role feature group:

```
role feature-group name Security-features
  feature radius
  feature tacacs
  feature aaa
  feature acl
  feature access-list
```

The following example shows how to configure a user account:

```
username user1 password A1s2D4f5 role User-role-A
```

The following example shows how to add an OID rule to restrict access to part of the OID subtree:

```
role name User1
  rule 1 permit read feature snmp
  rule 2 deny read oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.9
show role name User1

Role: User1
  Description: new role
  Vlan policy: permit (default)
  Interface policy: permit (default)
  Vrf policy: permit (default)
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  Rule    Perm    Type        Scope               Entity
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  2       deny    read        oid                 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.9
  1       permit  read        feature             snmp
```

The following example shows how to give write permission to a specified OID subtree:

```
role name User1
rule 3 permit read-write oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5
show role name User1

Role: User1
  Description: new role
  Vlan policy: permit (default)
  Interface policy: permit (default)
  Vrf policy: permit (default)
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  Rule    Perm    Type        Scope               Entity
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  3       permit  read-write  oid                 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5
  2       deny    read        oid                 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.9
```

```
1       permit  read        feature             snmp
```

Additional References for User Accounts and RBAC

This section includes additional information related to implementing user accounts and RBAC.

Related Documents

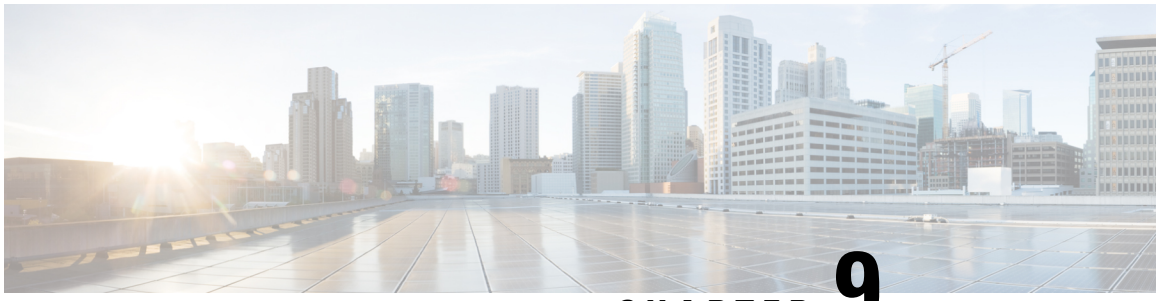
Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS Licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*
VRF configuration	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
MIBs related to user accounts and RBAC	To locate and download supported MIBs, go to the following URL: ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/supportlists/nexus9000/Nexus9000MIBSupportList.html



CHAPTER 9

Configuring IP ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure IP access control lists (ACLs) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

Unless otherwise specified, the term IP ACL refers to IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About ACLs

An ACL is an ordered set of rules that you can use to filter traffic. Each rule specifies a set of conditions that a packet must satisfy to match the rule. When the device determines that an ACL applies to a packet, it tests the packet against the conditions of all rules. The first matching rule determines whether the packet is permitted or denied. If there is no match, the device applies the applicable implicit rule. The device continues processing packets that are permitted and drops packets that are denied.

You can use ACLs to protect networks and specific hosts from unnecessary or unwanted traffic. For example, you could use ACLs to disallow HTTP traffic from a high-security network to the Internet. You could also use ACLs to allow HTTP traffic but only to specific sites, using the IP address of the site to identify it in an IP ACL.

ACL Types and Applications

The device supports the following types of ACLs for security traffic filtering:

IPv4 ACLs
The device applies IPv4 ACLs only to IPv4 traffic.
IPv6 ACLs
The device applies IPv6 ACLs only to IPv6 traffic.
MAC ACLs
The device applies MAC ACLs only to non-IP traffic.

IP and MAC ACLs have the following types of applications:

Port ACL
Filters Layer 2 traffic
Router ACL
Filters Layer 3 traffic
VLAN ACL
Filters VLAN traffic
VTY ACL
Filters virtual teletype (VTY) traffic

This table summarizes the applications for security ACLs.

Table 11: Security ACL Applications

Application	Supported Interfaces	Types of ACLs Supported
Port ACL	• Layer 2 interfaces • Layer 2 Ethernet port-channel interfaces When a port ACL is applied to a trunk port, the ACL filters traffic on all VLANs on the trunk port.	• IPv4 ACLs • IPv6 ACLs • MAC ACLs
Router ACL	• VLAN interfaces • Physical Layer 3 interfaces • Layer 3 Ethernet subinterfaces • Layer 3 Ethernet port-channel interfaces • Management interfaces **Note** You must enable VLAN interfaces globally before you can configure a VLAN interface.	• IPv4 ACLs • IPv6 ACLs **Note** MAC ACLs are supported on Layer 3 interfaces only if you enable MAC packet classification. **Note** Egress router ACLs are not supported on subinterfaces and on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switch uplink ports.
VLAN ACL	• VLANs	• IPv4 ACLs • IPv6 ACLs • MAC ACLs
VTY ACL	• VTYs	• IPv4 ACLs • IPv6 ACLs

Related Topics

About VLAN ACLs, on page 221
About MAC ACLs, on page 211

Order of ACL Application

When the device processes a packet, it determines the forwarding path of the packet. The path determines which ACLs that the device applies to the traffic. The device applies the ACLs in the following order:

1. Port ACL
2. Ingress VACL
3. Ingress router ACL
4. Ingress VTY ACL
5. Egress VTY ACL
6. Egress router ACL
7. Egress VACL

If the packet is bridged within the ingress VLAN, the device does not apply router ACLs.

Figure 5: Order of ACL Application

The following figure shows the order in which the device applies ACLs.

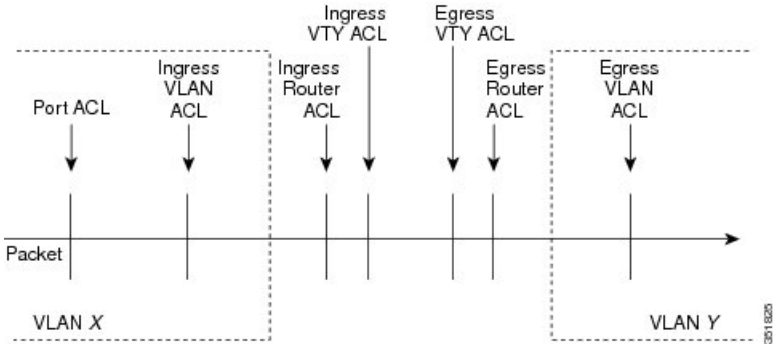
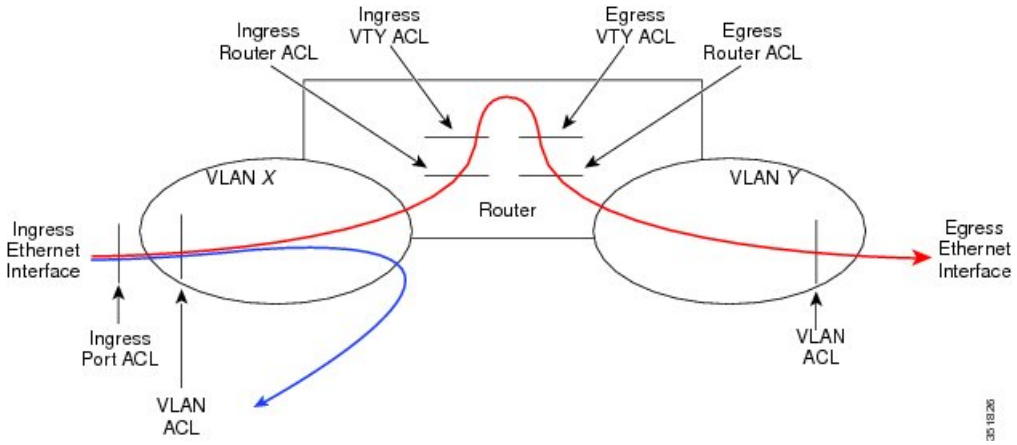


Figure 6: ACLs and Packet Flow

The following figure shows where the device applies ACLs, depending upon the type of ACL. The red path indicates a packet sent to a destination on a different interface than its source. The blue path indicates a packet that is bridged within its VLAN.

The device applies only the applicable ACLs. For example, if the ingress port is a Layer 2 port and the traffic is on a VLAN that is a VLAN interface, a port ACL and a router ACL both can apply. In addition, if a VACL is applied to the VLAN, the device applies that ACL too.



About Rules

Rules are what you create, modify, and remove when you configure how an ACL filters network traffic. Rules appear in the running configuration. When you apply an ACL to an interface or change a rule within an ACL that is already applied to an interface, the supervisor module creates ACL entries from the rules in the running configuration and sends those ACL entries to the applicable I/O module. Depending upon how you configure the ACL, there may be more ACL entries than rules, especially if you implement policy-based ACLs by using object groups when you configure rules.

You can create rules in access-list configuration mode by using the **permit** or **deny** command. The device allows traffic that matches the criteria in a permit rule and blocks traffic that matches the criteria in a deny rule. You have many options for configuring the criteria that traffic must meet in order to match the rule.

This section describes some of the options that you can use when you configure a rule.

Protocols for IP ACLs and MAC ACLs

IPv4, IPv6, and MAC ACLs allow you to identify traffic by protocol. For your convenience, you can specify some protocols by name. For example, in an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL, you can specify ICMP by name.

You can specify any protocol by number. In MAC ACLs, you can specify protocols by the EtherType number of the protocol, which is a hexadecimal number. For example, you can use 0x0800 to specify IP traffic in a MAC ACL rule.

In IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs, you can specify protocols by the integer that represents the Internet protocol number.

Source and Destination

In each rule, you specify the source and the destination of the traffic that matches the rule. You can specify both the source and destination as a specific host, a network or group of hosts, or any host. How you specify the source and destination depends on whether you are configuring IPv4 ACLs, IPv6 ACLs, or MAC ACLs.

Implicit Rules for IP and MAC ACLs

IP and MAC ACLs have implicit rules, which means that although these rules do not appear in the running configuration, the device applies them to traffic when no other rules in an ACL match. When you configure the device to maintain per-rule statistics for an ACL, the device does not maintain statistics for implicit rules.

All IPv4 ACLs include the following implicit rule:

```
deny ip any any
```

This implicit rule ensures that the device denies unmatched IP traffic.

All IPv6 ACLs include the following implicit rule:

```
deny ipv6 any any
```

This implicit rule ensures that the device denies unmatched IPv6 traffic.

Note IPv6 nd-na, nd-ns, router-advertisement, and router-solicitation packets will not be permitted as the implicit permit rules on IPv6 ACL. You must add the following rules explicitly to allow them:

- **permit icmp any any nd-na**
- **permit icmp any any nd-ns**
- **permit icmp any any router-advertisement**
- **permit icmp any any router-solicitation**

All MAC ACLs include the following implicit rule:

```
deny any any
protocol
```

This implicit rule ensures that the device denies the unmatched traffic, regardless of the protocol specified in the Layer 2 header of the traffic.

Additional Filtering Options

You can identify traffic by using additional options. These options differ by ACL type. The following list includes most but not all additional filtering options:

- IPv4 ACLs support the following additional filtering options:
  - Layer 4 protocol
  - TCP and UDP ports
  - ICMP types and codes
  - IGMP types
  - Precedence level
  - Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value
  - TCP packets with the ACK, FIN, PSH, RST, SYN, or URG bit set
  - Established TCP connections
  - Packet length
- IPv6 ACLs support the following additional filtering options:
  - Layer 4 protocol

- Encapsulating Security Payload
- Payload Compression Protocol
- Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP)
- SCTP, TCP, and UDP ports
- ICMP types and codes
- DSCP value
- TCP packets with the ACK, FIN, PSH, RST, SYN, or URG bit set
- Established TCP connections
- Packet length

- MAC ACLs support the following additional filtering options:
  - Layer 3 protocol (Ethertype)
  - VLAN ID
  - Class of Service (CoS)

Sequence Numbers

The device supports sequence numbers for rules. Every rule that you enter receives a sequence number, either assigned by you or assigned automatically by the device. Sequence numbers simplify the following ACL tasks:

Adding new rules between existing rules

By specifying the sequence number, you specify where in the ACL a new rule should be positioned. For example, if you need to insert a rule between rules numbered 100 and 110, you could assign a sequence number of 105 to the new rule.

Removing a rule

Without using a sequence number, removing a rule requires that you enter the whole rule, as follows:

```
switch(config-acl)# no permit tcp 10.0.0.0/8 any
```

However, if the same rule had a sequence number of 101, removing the rule requires only the following command:

```
switch(config-acl)# no 101
```

Moving a rule

With sequence numbers, if you need to move a rule to a different position within an ACL, you can add a second instance of the rule using the sequence number that positions it correctly, and then you can remove the original instance of the rule. This action allows you to move the rule without disrupting traffic.

If you enter a rule without a sequence number, the device adds the rule to the end of the ACL and assigns a sequence number that is 10 greater than the sequence number of the preceding rule to the rule. For example,

if the last rule in an ACL has a sequence number of 225 and you add a rule without a sequence number, the device assigns the sequence number 235 to the new rule.

In addition, Cisco NX-OS allows you to reassign sequence numbers to rules in an ACL. Resequencing is useful when an ACL has rules numbered contiguously, such as 100 and 101, and you need to insert one or more rules between those rules.

Logical Operators and Logical Operation Units

IP ACL rules for TCP and UDP traffic can use logical operators to filter traffic based on port numbers. Cisco NX-OS supports logical operators in only the ingress direction.

The device stores operator-operand couples in registers called logical operator units (LOUs). The LOU usage for each type of operator is as follows:

eq
Is never stored in an LOU

gt
Uses 1 LOU

lt
Uses 1 LOU

neq
Uses 1 LOU

range
Uses 1 LOU

IPv4 ACL Logging

The IPv4 ACL logging feature monitors IPv4 ACL flows and logs statistics.

A flow is defined by the source interface, protocol, source IP address, source port, destination IP address, and destination port values. The statistics maintained for a flow include the number of forwarded packets (for each flow that matches the permit conditions of the ACL entry) and dropped packets (for each flow that matches the deny conditions of the ACL entry).

Time Ranges

You can use time ranges to control when an ACL rule is in effect. For example, if the device determines that a particular ACL applies to traffic arriving on an interface, and a rule in the ACL uses a time range that is not in effect, the device does not compare the traffic to that rule. The device evaluates time ranges based on its clock.

When you apply an ACL that uses time ranges, the device updates the affected I/O module whenever a time range referenced in the ACL starts or ends. Updates that are initiated by time ranges occur on a best-effort priority. If the device is especially busy when a time range causes an update, the device may delay the update by up to a few seconds.

IPv4, IPv6, and MAC ACLs support time ranges. When the device applies an ACL to traffic, the rules in effect are as follows:

- All rules without a time range specified
- Rules with a time range that includes the second when the device applies the ACL to traffic

The device supports named, reusable time ranges, which allows you to configure a time range once and specify it by name when you configure many ACL rules. Time range names have a maximum length of 64 alphanumeric characters.

A time range contains one or more rules. The two types of rules are as follows:

Absolute

A rule with a specific start date and time, specific end date and time, both, or neither. The following items describe how the presence or absence of a start or end date and time affect whether an absolute time range rule is active:

- Start and end date and time both specified—The time range rule is active when the current time is later than the start date and time and earlier than the end date and time.
- Start date and time specified with no end date and time—The time range rule is active when the current time is later than the start date and time.
- No start date and time with end date and time specified—The time range rule is active when the current time is earlier than the end date and time.
- No start or end date and time specified—The time range rule is always active.

For example, you could prepare your network to allow access to a new subnet by specifying a time range that allows access beginning at midnight of the day that you plan to place the subnet online. You can use that time range in ACL rules that apply to the subnet. After the start time and date have passed, the device automatically begins applying the rules that use this time range when it applies the ACLs that contain the rules.

Periodic

A rule that is active one or more times per week. For example, you could use a periodic time range to allow access to a lab subnet only during work hours on weekdays. The device automatically applies ACL rules that use this time range only when the range is active and when it applies the ACLs that contain the rules.

Note The order of rules in a time range does not affect how a device evaluates whether a time range is active. Cisco NX-OS includes sequence numbers in time ranges to make editing the time range easier.

Time ranges also allow you to include remarks, which you can use to insert comments into a time range. Remarks have a maximum length of 100 alphanumeric characters.

The device determines whether a time range is active as follows:

- The time range contains one or more absolute rules—The time range is active if the current time is within one or more absolute rules.
- The time range contains one or more periodic rules—The time range is active if the current time is within one or more periodic rules.
- The time range contains both absolute and periodic rules—The time range is active if the current time is within one or more absolute rules and within one or more periodic rules.

When a time range contains both absolute and periodic rules, the periodic rules can only be active when at least one absolute rule is active.

Policy-Based ACLs

The device supports policy-based ACLs (PBACLs), which allow you to apply access control policies across object groups. An object group is a group of IP addresses or a group of TCP or UDP ports. When you create a rule, you specify the object groups rather than specifying IP addresses or ports.

Using object groups when you configure IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs can help reduce the complexity of updating ACLs when you need to add or remove addresses or ports from the source or destination of rules. For example, if three rules reference the same IP address group object, you can add an IP address to the object instead of changing all three rules.

PBACLs do not reduce the resources required by an ACL when you apply it to an interface. When you apply a PBACL or update a PBACL that is already applied, the device expands each rule that refers to object groups into one ACL entry per object within the group. If a rule specifies the source and destination both with object groups, the number of ACL entries created on the I/O module when you apply the PBACL is equal to the number of objects in the source group multiplied by the number of objects in the destination group.

The following object group types apply to port, router, policy-based routing (PBR), and VLAN ACLs:

IPv4 Address Object Groups

Can be used with IPv4 ACL rules to specify source or destination addresses. When you use the **permit** or **deny** command to configure a rule, the **addrgroup** keyword allows you to specify an object group for the source or destination.

IPv6 Address Object Groups

Can be used with IPv6 ACL rules to specify source or destination addresses. When you use the **permit** or **deny** command to configure a rule, the **addrgroup** keyword allows you to specify an object group for the source or destination.

Protocol Port Object Groups

Can be used with IPv4 and IPv6 TCP and UDP rules to specify source or destination ports. When you use the **permit** or **deny** command to configure a rule, the **portgroup** keyword allows you to specify an object group for the source or destination.

Note Policy-based routing (PBR) ACLs do not support deny access control entries (ACEs) or **deny** commands to configure a rule.

Statistics and ACLs

The device can maintain global statistics for each rule that you configure in IPv4, IPv6, and MAC ACLs. If an ACL is applied to multiple interfaces, the maintained rule statistics are the sum of packet matches (hits) on all the interfaces on which that ACL is applied.

Note The device does not support interface-level ACL statistics.

For each ACL that you configure, you can specify whether the device maintains statistics for that ACL, which allows you to turn ACL statistics on or off as needed to monitor traffic filtered by an ACL or to help troubleshoot the configuration of an ACL.

The device does not maintain statistics for implicit rules in an ACL. For example, the device does not maintain a count of packets that match the implicit **deny ip any any** rule at the end of all IPv4 ACLs. If you want to maintain statistics for implicit rules, you must explicitly configure the ACL with rules that are identical to the implicit rules.

Related Topics

Monitoring and Clearing IP ACL Statistics, on page 199
Implicit Rules for IP and MAC ACLs, on page 160

Atomic ACL Updates

By default, when a supervisor module of a Cisco Nexus 9000 Series device updates an I/O module with changes to an ACL, it performs an atomic ACL update. An atomic update does not disrupt traffic that the updated ACL applies to; however, an atomic update requires that an I/O module that receives an ACL update has enough available resources to store each updated ACL entry in addition to all pre-existing entries in the affected ACL. After the update occurs, the additional resources used for the update are freed. If the I/O module lacks the required resources, the device generates an error message and the ACL update to the I/O module fails.

If an I/O module lacks the resources required for an atomic update, you can disable atomic updates by using the **no hardware access-list update atomic** command; however, during the brief time required for the device to remove the preexisting ACL and implement the updated ACL, traffic that the ACL applies to is dropped by default.

If you want to permit all traffic that an ACL applies to while it receives a nonatomic update, use the **hardware access-list update default-result permit** command.

This example shows how to disable atomic updates to ACLs:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# no hardware access-list update atomic
```

This example shows how to permit affected traffic during a nonatomic ACL update:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# hardware access-list update default-result permit
```

This example shows how to revert to the atomic update method:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# no hardware access-list update default-result permit
switch(config)# hardware access-list update atomic
```

Session Manager Support for IP ACLs

Session Manager supports the configuration of IP and MAC ACLs. This feature allows you to verify ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration.

ACL TCAM Regions

You can change the size of the ACL ternary content addressable memory (TCAM) regions in the hardware.

On Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series switches and Cisco Nexus 3164Q, 31128PQ, 3232C, and 3264Q switches, the egress TCAM size is 1K, divided into four 256 entries. On other Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series switches and the 3164Q and 31128PQ switches, the ingress TCAM size is 4K, divided into eight 256 slices and four 512 slices. A slice is the unit of allocation. A slice can be allocated to one region only. For example, a 512-size slice cannot be used to configure two features of size 256 each. Similarly, a 256-size slice cannot be used to configure two features of size 128 each. The IPv4 TCAM regions are single wide. The IPv6, QoS, MAC, CoPP, and system TCAM regions are double wide and consume double the physical TCAM entries. For example, a logical region size of 256 entries actually consumes 512 physical TCAM entries.

You can create IPv6, port ACLs, VLAN ACLs, and router ACLs, and you can match IPv6 and MAC addresses for QoS. However, Cisco NX-OS cannot support all of them simultaneously. You must remove or reduce the size of the existing TCAM regions (TCAM carving) to enable the IPv6, MAC, or other desired TCAM regions. For every TCAM region configuration command, the system evaluates if the new change can be fit in the TCAM. If not, it reports an error, and the command is rejected. You must remove or reduce the size of existing TCAM regions to make room for new requirements.

ACL TCAM region sizes have the following guidelines and limitations:

- On Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switches, the default ingress TCAM region configuration has one free 256-entry slice in Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1). This slice is allocated to the SPAN region in Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1). Similarly, the RACL region is reduced from 2K to 1.5K in Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1) to make room for the vPC convergence region with 512 entries.
- To enable RACL or PACL on existing TCAM regions, you must carve the TCAM region beyond 12, 288.
- On Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches, the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards are used to enforce the QoS classification policies applied on 40G ports. It has 768 TCAM entries available for carving in 256-entry granularity. These region names are prefixed with "ns-".
- For the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards, only the IPv6 TCAM regions consume double-wide entries. The rest of the TCAM regions consume single-wide entries.
- When a VACL region is configured, it is configured with the same size in both the ingress and egress directions. If the region size cannot fit in either direction, the configuration is rejected.
- RACL v6, CoPP, and multicast have default TCAM sizes and these TCAM sizes must be non-zero on the following Cisco Nexus 9504 and Cisco Nexus 9508 line cards to avoid line card failure during reload:
  - N9K-X96136YC-R
  - N9K-X9636C-RX
  - N9K-X9636Q-R
  - N9K-X9636C-R
- The N9K-X96136YC-R and N9K-X9636C-R line cards support egress RACL of 2K.

The following table summarizes the regions that need to be configured for a given feature to work. The region sizes should be selected based on the scale requirements of a given feature.

Table 12: Features per ACL TCAM Region

Feature Name	Region Name
Port ACL	ifacl: For IPv4 port ACLs ipv6-ifacl: For IPv6 port ACLs mac-ifacl: For MAC port ACLs
Port QoS (QoS classification policy applied on Layer 2 ports or port channels)	qos, qos-lite, ns-qos, e-qos, or e-qos-lite: For classifying IPv4 packets ipv6-qos, ns-ipv6-qos, or e-ipv6-qos: For classifying IPv6 packets mac-qos, ns-mac-qos, or e-mac-qos: For classifying non-IP packets **Note** For traffic that needs to be classified on 40G ports on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches, you must carve the qos regions and the corresponding ns-*qos regions.
VACL	vacl: For IPv4 packets ipv6-vacl: For IPv6 packets mac-vacl: For non-IP packets
VLAN QoS (QoS classification policy applied on a VLAN)	vqos or ns-vqos: For classifying IPv4 packets ipv6-vqos or ns-ipv6-vqos: For classifying IPv6 packets mac-vqos or ns-mac-vqos: For classifying non-IP packets **Note** For traffic that needs to be classified on 40G ports on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches, you must carve the qos regions and the corresponding ns-*qos regions.
RACL	e-racl: For egress IPv4 RACLs e-ipv6-racl: For egress IPv6 RACLs racl: For IPv4 RACLs ipv6-racl: For IPv6 RACLs

Feature Name	Region Name
Layer 3 QoS (QoS classification policy applied on Layer 3 ports or port channels)	l3qos, l3qos-lite, or ns-l3qos: For classifying IPv4 packets ipv6-l3qos or ns-ipv6-l3qos: For classifying IPv6 packets **Note** For traffic that needs to be classified on 40G ports on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches, you must carve qos regions and the corresponding ns-*qos regions.
VLAN source or VLAN filter SPAN (for Cisco Nexus 9500 or 9300 Series switches) Rx SPAN on 40G ports (for Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches only)	span
SPAN filters	ifacl: For filtering IPv4 traffic on Layer 2 (switch port) source interfaces. ipv6-ifacl: For filtering IPv6 traffic on Layer 2 (switch port) source interfaces. mac-ifacl: For filtering Layer 2 traffic on Layer 2 (switch port) source interfaces. vacl: For filtering IPv4 traffic on VLAN sources. ipv6-vacl: For filtering IPv6 traffic on VLAN sources. mac-vacl: For filtering Layer 2 traffic on VLAN sources. racl: For filtering IPv4 traffic on Layer 3 interfaces. ipv6-racl: For filtering IPv6 traffic on Layer 3 interfaces.
SVI counters **Note** This region enables the packet counters for Layer 3 SVI interfaces.	svi
BFD, DHCP relay, or DHCPv6 relay	redirect
CoPP	copp **Note** The region size cannot be 0.

Feature Name	Region Name
System-managed ACLs	system **Note** The region size cannot be changed.
vPC convergence **Note** This region boosts the convergence times when a vPC link goes down and traffic needs to be redirected to the peer link.	vpc-convergence **Note** Setting this region size to 0 might affect the convergence times of vPC link failures.
Fabric extender (FEX)	fex-ifacl, fex-ipv6-ifacl, fex-ipv6-qos, fex-mac-ifacl, fex-mac-qos, fex-qos, fex-qos-lite

Related Topics

Configuring ACL TCAM Region Sizes, on page 180
Configuring TCAM Carving , on page 186
Configuring TCAM Carving - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1), on page 190

Maximum Label Sizes Supported for ACL Types

Cisco NX-OS switches support the following label sizes for the corresponding ACL types:

Table 13: ACL Types and Maximum Label Sizes

ACL Types	Direction	Label	Label Type
RACL/PBR/VACL/ L3-VLAN QoS/L3-VLAN SPAN ACL	Ingress	62	BD
RACL/VACL/L3-VLAN QoS	Egress	254	BD
L2 QoS	Egress	31	IF

Licensing Requirements for IP ACLs

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	No license is required to use IP ACLs. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for IP ACLs

IP ACLs have the following prerequisites:

- You must be familiar with IP addressing and protocols to configure IP ACLs.
- You must be familiar with the interface types that you want to configure with ACLs.

Guidelines and Limitations for IP ACLs

IP ACLs have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- We recommend that you perform ACL configuration using the Session Manager. This feature allows you to verify ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration. This is especially useful for ACLs that include more than 1000 rules. For more information about Session Manager, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide*.
- Duplicate ACL entries with different sequence numbers are allowed in the configuration. However, these duplicate entries are not programmed in the hardware access-list.
- Only 62 unique ACLs can be configured. Each ACL takes one label. If the same ACL is configured on multiple interfaces, the same label is shared. If each ACL has unique entries, the ACL labels are not shared, and the label limit is 62.
- In most cases, ACL processing for IP packets occurs on the I/O modules, which use hardware that accelerates ACL processing. In some circumstances, processing occurs on the supervisor module, which can result in slower ACL processing, especially during processing that involves an ACL with a large number of rules. Management interface traffic is always processed on the supervisor module. If IP packets in any of the following categories are exiting a Layer 3 interface, they are sent to the supervisor module for processing:
  - Packets that fail the Layer 3 maximum transmission unit check and therefore require fragmenting.
  - IPv4 packets that have IP options (additional IP packet header fields following the destination address field).
  - IPv6 packets that have extended IPv6 header fields.

  Rate limiters prevent redirected packets from overwhelming the supervisor module.
- When you apply an ACL that uses time ranges, the device updates the ACL entries whenever a time range referenced in an ACL entry starts or ends. Updates that are initiated by time ranges occur on a best-effort priority. If the device is especially busy when a time range causes an update, the device may delay the update by up to a few seconds.
- To apply an IP ACL to a VLAN interface, you must have enabled VLAN interfaces globally. For more information about VLAN interfaces, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide*.
- The VTY ACL feature restricts all traffic for all VTY lines. You cannot specify different traffic restrictions for different VTY lines. Any router ACL can be configured as a VTY ACL.
- When you apply an undefined ACL to an interface, the system treats the ACL as empty and permits all traffic.
- IP tunnels do not support ACLs or QoS policies.
- IPv6 ACL logging is not supported.

- IPv4 ACL logging in the egress direction is not supported.
- ACL logging for VACLs is not supported.
- ACL logging applies to port ACLs configured by the **ip port access-group** command and to router ACLs configured by the **ip access-group** command only.
- The total number of IPv4 ACL flows is limited to a user-defined maximum value to prevent DoS attacks. If this limit is reached, no new logs are created until an existing flow finishes.
- The number of syslog entries generated by IPv4 ACL logging is limited by the configured logging level of the ACL logging process. If the number of syslog entries exceeds this limit, the logging facility might drop some logging messages. Therefore, IPv4 ACL logging should not be used as a billing tool or as an accurate source of the number of matches to an ACL.
- Egress router ACLs are not supported on subinterfaces and on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switch uplink ports.
- An RACL applied on a Layer 3 physical or logical interface does not match multicast traffic. If multicast traffic must be blocked, use a PACL instead. This behavior applies to Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series switches and the Cisco Nexus 3164Q switch.
- For Network Forwarding Engine (NFE)-enabled switches, ingress RACLs matching the tunnel interface's outer header are not supported.
- If the same QoS policy and ACL are applied to multiple interfaces, the label will be shared only when the QoS policy is applied with the no-stats option.
- The switch hardware does not support range checks (Layer 4 operations) in the egress TCAM. Therefore, ACL and QoS policies with a Layer 4 operations-based classification need to be expanded to multiple entries in the egress TCAM. Make sure to consider this limitation for egress TCAM space planning.
- TCAM resources are shared in the following scenarios:
  - When a routed ACL is applied to multiple switched virtual interfaces (SVIs) in the ingress direction
  - When a routed ACL is applied to multiple physical Layer 3 interfaces in the ingress or egress direction
- TCAM resources are not shared in the following scenarios:
  - VACL (VLAN ACL) is applied to multiple VLANs.
  - Routed ACL is applied to multiple SVIs in the egress direction.
- TCAM resources are not shared when a routed ACL is applied to multiple SVIs in the egress direction.
- Cisco Nexus 9504 and Cisco Nexus 9508 platform switches with -R line cards does not support the following TCAM:
  - All FEX related TCAM
  - All xxx-lite related TCAM region
  - Ranger related TCAM
  - All FCoE related TCAM

- In the Cisco Nexus 9200 and 9300-EX Series switches, RACL with ACL log option will not take into effect as the sup-redirect ACLs will have higher priority for the traffic destined to SUP.
- For traffic destined to the FHRP VIP and ingressing on FHRP standby which matches an ACL log enabled ACE designed to permit the traffic, the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switch will drop this packet.
- A RACL and PACL cannot co-exist in the external TCAM. While, the RACL IPv4 and IPv6 can both exist in external TCAM at the same time, the PACL IPv4 cannot co-exist with either RACL IPv4 or IPv6 and vice versa. This behavior applies to Cisco Nexus 9508 switch with N9K-X9636C-RX line card.
- For Broadcom-based Cisco Nexus 9000 series switches, when there is a SVI and subinterface matching the same VLAN tag, the traffic that gets routed out through a subinterface gets dropped if the access-list is configured on that SVI. This is due to an ASIC limitation and egress RACL on L3 subinterfaces is not supported due to this limitation.

Default Settings for IP ACLs

This table lists the default settings for IP ACL parameters.

Table 14: Default IP ACL Parameters

Parameters	Default
IP ACLs	No IP ACLs exist by default
IP ACL entries	1024
ACL rules	Implicit rules apply to all ACLs
Object groups	No object groups exist by default
Time ranges	No time ranges exist by default

Related Topics

Implicit Rules for IP and MAC ACLs, on page 160

Configuring IP ACLs

Creating an IP ACL

You can create an IPv4 ACL or IPv6 ACL on the device and add rules to it.

Before you begin

We recommend that you perform the ACL configuration using the Session Manager. This feature allows you to verify the ACL configuration and confirm that the resources that are required by the configuration are available before committing them to the running configuration. This feature is especially useful for ACLs that include more than about 1000 rules.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **ip access-list** *name*
   - **ipv6 access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) **fragments** {**permit-all** | **deny-all**}
4. [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol* {*source-ip-prefix* | *source-ip-mask*} {*destination-ip-prefix* | *destination-ip-mask*}
5. (Optional) **statistics per-entry**
6. (Optional) Enter one of the following commands:
   - **show ip access-lists** *name*
   - **show ipv6 access-lists** *name*
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **ip access-list** *name*
	• **ipv6 access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# ip access-list acl-01`
	`switch(config-acl)#`
		Creates the IP ACL and enters IP ACL configuration mode. The *name* argument can be up to 64 characters.

Step 3	(Optional) **fragments** {**permit-all**	**deny-all**} **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# fragments permit-all`	Optimizes fragment handling for noninitial fragments. When a device applies to traffic an ACL that contains the **fragments** command, the **fragments** command only matches noninitial fragments that do not match any explicit **permit** or **deny** commands in the ACL.
Step 4	[*sequence-number*] {**permit**	**deny**} *protocol* {*source-ip-prefix*	*source-ip-mask*} {*destination-ip-prefix*	*destination-ip-mask*} **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# permit ip 192.168.2.0/24 any`	Creates a rule in the IP ACL. You can create many rules. The *sequence-number* argument can be a whole number between 1 and 4294967295. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic. For IPv4 and IPv6 access lists, you can specify a source and destination IPv4 or IPv6 prefix, which matches only on the first contiguous bits, or you can specify a source and destination IPv4 wildcard mask, which matches on any bit in the address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) **statistics per-entry** **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# statistics per-entry`	Specifies that the device maintains global statistics for packets that match the rules in the ACL.
Step 6	(Optional) Enter one of the following commands: • **show ip access-lists** *name* • **show ipv6 access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# show ip access-lists acl-01`	Displays the IP ACL configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing an IP ACL

You can add and remove rules in an existing IPv4 or IPv6 ACL, but you cannot change existing rules. Instead, to change a rule, you can remove it and recreate it with the desired changes.

If you need to add more rules between existing rules than the current sequence numbering allows, you can use the **resequence** command to reassign sequence numbers.

Before you begin

We recommend that you perform ACL configuration using the Session Manager. This feature allows you to verify ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration. This feature is especially useful for ACLs that include more than about 1000 rules.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **ip access-list** *name*
   - **ipv6 access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol source destination*
4. (Optional) [**no**] **fragments** {**permit-all** | **deny-all**}
5. (Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol source destination*}
6. (Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry**
7. (Optional) Enter one of the following commands:
   - **show ip access-lists** *name*
   - **show ipv6 access-lists** *name*
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **ip access-list** *name*
	• **ipv6 access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# ip access-list acl-01`
	`switch(config-acl)#`
		Enters IP ACL configuration mode for the ACL that you specify by name.

Step 3	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol source destination* **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# 100 permit ip 192.168.2.0/24 any`	Creates a rule in the IP ACL. Using a sequence number allows you to specify a position for the rule in the ACL. Without a sequence number, the rule is added to the end of the rules. The *sequence-number* argument can be a whole number between 1 and 4294967295. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic.
Step 4	(Optional) [**no**] **fragments** {**permit-all** | **deny-all**} **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# fragments permit-all`	Optimizes fragment handling for noninitial fragments. When a device applies to traffic an ACL that contains the **fragments** command, the **fragments** command only matches noninitial fragments that do not match any explicit **permit** or **deny** commands in the ACL. The **no** option removes fragment-handling optimization.
Step 5	(Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | {**permit** | **deny**} *protocol source destination*} **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# no 80`	Removes the rule that you specified from the IP ACL. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic.
Step 6	(Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry** **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# statistics per-entry`	Specifies that the device maintains global statistics for packets that match the rules in the ACL. The **no** option stops the device from maintaining global statistics for the ACL.
Step 7	(Optional) Enter one of the following commands: • **show ip access-lists** *name* • **show ipv6 access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# show ip access-lists acl-01`	Displays the IP ACL configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Changing Sequence Numbers in an IP ACL, on page 178

Creating a VTY ACL

You can configure a VTY ACL to control access to all IPv4 or IPv6 traffic over all VTY lines in the ingress or egress direction.

Before you begin

Set identical restrictions on all the virtual terminal lines because a user can connect to any of them.

We recommend that you perform ACL configuration using the Session Manager. This feature allows you to verify ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration, which is especially useful for ACLs that include more than about 1000 rules.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. { **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-list** *name*
3. { **permit** | **deny** } *protocol source destination* [**log**] [**time-range** *time*]
4. **exit**
5. **line vty**
6. { **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-class** *name* { **in** | **out** }
7. (Optional) **show** { **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-lists**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	{ **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-list** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# ip access-list vtyacl`	Creates an ACL and enters IP access list configuration mode for that ACL. The maximum length for the *name* argument is 64 characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	{ **permit** | **deny** } *protocol source destination* [**log**] [**time-range** *time*] **Example:** `switch(config-ip-acl)# permit tcp any any`	Creates an ACL rule that permits TCP traffic from and to the specified sources.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-ip-acl)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits IP access list configuration mode.

Step 5	**line vty**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# line vty`
	`switch(config-line)#`
		Specifies the virtual terminal and enters line configuration mode.

Step 6	{ **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-class** *name* { **in** | **out** } **Example:** `switch(config-line)# ip access-class vtyacl out`	Restricts incoming or outgoing connections to and from all VTY lines using the specified ACL. The maximum length for the *name* argument is 64 characters.
Step 7	(Optional) **show** { **ip** | **ipv6** } **access-lists** **Example:** `switch# show ip access-lists`	Displays the configured ACLs, including any VTY ACLs.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing Sequence Numbers in an IP ACL

You can change all the sequence numbers assigned to the rules in an IP ACL.

Before you begin

We recommend that you perform ACL configuration using the Session Manager. This feature allows you to verify ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration. This feature is especially useful for ACLs that include more than about 1000 rules.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **resequence** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **access-list** *name starting-sequence-number increment*
3. (Optional) **show ip access-lists** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**resequence** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **access-list** *name starting-sequence-number increment* **Example:** `switch(config)# resequence access-list ip acl-01 100 10`	Assigns sequence numbers to the rules contained in the ACL, where the first rule receives the starting sequence number that you specify. Each subsequent rule receives a number larger than the preceding rule. The difference in numbers is determined by the increment that you specify. The *starting-sequence-number* argument and the *increment* argument can be a whole number between 1 and 4294967295.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ip access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# show ip access-lists acl-01`	Displays the IP ACL configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Removing an IP ACL

You can remove an IP ACL from the device.

Before you begin

Ensure that you know whether the ACL is applied to an interface. The device allows you to remove ACLs that are currently applied. Removing an ACL does not affect the configuration of interfaces where you have applied the ACL. Instead, the device considers the removed ACL to be empty. Use the **show ip access-lists** command or the **show ipv6 access-lists** command with the summary keyword to find the interfaces that an IP ACL is configured on.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **no ip access-list** *name*
   - **no ipv6 access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) Enter one of the following commands:
   - **show ip access-lists** *name* **summary**
   - **show ipv6 access-lists** *name* **summary**

4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands: • **no ip access-list** *name* • **no ipv6 access-list** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# no ip access-list acl-01`	Removes the IP ACL that you specified by name from the running configuration.
Step 3	(Optional) Enter one of the following commands: • **show ip access-lists** *name* **summary** • **show ipv6 access-lists** *name* **summary** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ip access-lists acl-01 summary`	Displays the IP ACL configuration. If the ACL remains applied to an interface, the command lists the interfaces.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring ACL TCAM Region Sizes

You can change the size of the ACL ternary content addressable memory (TCAM) regions in the hardware.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **hardware access-list tcam region** *region tcam-size*
3. **copy running-config startup-config**
4. (Optional) **show hardware access-list tcam region**
5. **reload**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure terminal** **Example:**	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# configure terminal` `switch(config)#`	
Step 2	[**no**] **hardware access-list tcam region** *region tcam-size* **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region mpls 256`	Changes the ACL TCAM region size. These are the available regions: • **copp**—Configures the size of the CoPP TCAM region. • **e-flow**—Configures the size of the egress flow counters TCAM region. • **e-ipv6-qos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 egress QoS TCAM region. • **e-ipv6-racl**—Configures the size of the IPv6 egress router ACL (ERACL) TCAM region. • **e-mac-qos**—Configures the size of the egress MAC QoS TCAM region. • **e-qos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 egress QoS TCAM region. • **e-qos-lite**—Configures the size of the IPv4 egress QoS lite TCAM region. • **e-racl**—Configures the size of the IPv4 egress router ACL (ERACL) TCAM region. • **fex-ifacl**—Configures the size of the FEX IPv4 port ACL TCAM region. • **fex-ipv6-ifacl**—Configures the size of the FEX IPv6 port ACL TCAM region. • **fex-ipv6-qos**—Configures the size of the FEX IPv6 port QoS TCAM region. • **fex-mac-ifacl**—Configures the size of the FEX MAC port ACL TCAM region. • **fex-mac-qos**—Configures the size of the FEX MAC port QoS TCAM region. • **fex-qos**—Configures the size of the FEX IPv4 port QoS TCAM region. • **fex-qos-lite**—Configures the size of the FEX IPv4 port QoS lite TCAM region. • **flow**—Configures the size of the ingress flow counters TCAM region. • **ifacl**—Configures the size of the IPv4 port ACL TCAM region.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• **ipv6-ifacl**—Configures the size of the IPv6 port ACL TCAM region. • **ipv6-l3qos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 Layer 3 QoS TCAM region. • **ipv6-qos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 port QoS TCAM region. • **ipv6-racl**—Configures the size of the IPv6 RACL TCAM region. • **ipv6-vacl**—Configures the size of the IPv6 VACL TCAM region. • **ipv6-vqos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 VLAN QoS TCAM region. • **l3qos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 Layer 3 QoS TCAM region. • **l3qos-lite**—Configures the size of the IPv4 Layer 3 QoS lite TCAM region. • **mac-ifacl**—Configures the size of the MAC port ACL TCAM region. • **mac-l3qos**—Configures the size of the MAC Layer 3 QoS TCAM region. • **mac-qos**—Configures the size of the MAC port QoS TCAM region. • **mac-vacl**—Configures the size of the MAC VACL TCAM region. • **mac-vqos**—Configures the size of the MAC VLAN QoS TCAM region. • **ns-ipv6-l3qos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 Layer 3 QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-ipv6-qos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 port QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-ipv6-vqos**—Configures the size of the IPv6 VLAN QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-l3qos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 Layer 3 QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and

	Command or Action	Purpose
		X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-mac-l3qos**—Configures the size of the MAC Layer 3 QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-mac-qos**—Configures the size of the MAC port QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-mac-vqos**—Configures the size of the MAC VLAN QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-qos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 port QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **ns-vqos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 VLAN QoS TCAM region for the X9536PQ, X9564PX, and X9564TX line cards and the M12PQ generic expansion module (GEM). • **qos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 port QoS TCAM region. • **qos-lite**—Configures the size of the IPv4 port QoS lite TCAM region. • **racl**—Configures the size of the IPv4 router ACL (RACL) TCAM region. • **redirect**—Configures the size of the redirect TCAM region. • **span**—Configures the size of the SPAN TCAM region. • **svi**—Configures the size of the ingress SVI counters TCAM region. • **vacl**—Configures the size of the IPv4 VACL TCAM region. • **vpc-convergence**—Configures the size of the vPC convergence TCAM region. • **vqos**—Configures the size of the IPv4 VLAN QoS TCAM region.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• **vqos-lite**—Configures the size of the IPv4 VLAN QoS lite TCAM region. • *tcam-size*—TCAM size. The size has to a multiple of 256. If the size is more than 256, it has to be multiple of 512. You can use the **no** form of this command to revert to the default TCAM region size.
Step 3	**copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **show hardware access-list tcam region** **Example:** `switch(config)# show hardware access-list tcam region`	Displays the TCAM sizes that will be applicable on the next reload of the device.
Step 5	**reload** **Example:** `switch(config)# reload`	Reloads the device. **Note** The new size values are effective only after you enter **copy running-config startup-config** + **reload** or reload all line card modules.

Example

The following example shows how to change the size of the RACL TCAM region on a Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switch:

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region racl 256
[SUCCESS] New tcam size will be applicable only at boot time.
You need to 'copy run start' and 'reload'
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config)# reload
WARNING: This command will reboot the system
Do you want to continue? (y/n) [n] y
```

This example shows how to display the TCAM region sizes to verify your changes:

```
switch(config)# show hardware access-list tcam region
         TCAM Region Sizes:

                              IPV4 PACL [ifacl] size =    0
                          IPV6 PACL [ipv6-ifacl] size =    0
                            MAC PACL [mac-ifacl] size =    0
                              IPV4 Port QoS [qos] size =    0
                         IPV6 Port QoS [ipv6-qos] size =    0
                           MAC Port QoS [mac-qos] size =    0
                       FEX IPV4 PACL [fex-ifacl] size =    0
                  FEX IPV6 PACL [fex-ipv6-ifacl] size =    0
                    FEX MAC PACL [fex-mac-ifacl] size =    0
```

```
                FEX IPV4 Port QoS [fex-qos] size =    0
              FEX IPV6 Port QoS [fex-ipv6-qos] size =    0
                FEX MAC Port QoS [fex-mac-qos] size =    0
                             IPV4 VACL [vacl] size =    0
                        IPV6 VACL [ipv6-vacl] size =    0
                          MAC VACL [mac-vacl] size =    0
                         IPV4 VLAN QoS [vqos] size =    0
                    IPV6 VLAN QoS [ipv6-vqos] size =    0
                      MAC VLAN QoS [mac-vqos] size =    0
                             IPV4 RACL [racl] size = 1536
                        IPV6 RACL [ipv6-racl] size =    0
               IPV4 Port QoS Lite [qos-lite] size =    0
          FEX IPV4 Port QoS Lite [fex-qos-lite] size =    0
             IPV4 VLAN QoS Lite [vqos-lite] size =    0
              IPV4 L3 QoS Lite [l3qos-lite] size =    0
                    Egress IPV4 QoS [e-qos] size =    0
               Egress IPV6 QoS [e-ipv6-qos] size =    0
                 Egress MAC QoS [e-mac-qos] size =    0
                    Egress IPV4 VACL [vacl] size =    0
               Egress IPV6 VACL [ipv6-vacl] size =    0
                 Egress MAC VACL [mac-vacl] size =    0
                  Egress IPV4 RACL [e-racl] size =  768
             Egress IPV6 RACL [e-ipv6-racl] size =    0
          Egress IPV4 QoS Lite [e-qos-lite] size =    0
                        IPV4 L3 QoS [l3qos] size =  256
                   IPV6 L3 QoS [ipv6-l3qos] size =    0
                     MAC L3 QoS [mac-l3qos] size =    0
                              Ingress System size =  256
                               Egress System size =  256
                                 SPAN [span] size =  256
                          Ingress COPP [copp] size =  256
               Ingress Flow Counters [flow] size =    0
              Egress Flow Counters [e-flow] size =    0
                 Ingress SVI Counters [svi] size =    0
                        Redirect [redirect] size =  256
                    NS IPV4 Port QoS [ns-qos] size =  256
               NS IPV6 Port QoS [ns-ipv6-qos] size =    0
                 NS MAC Port QoS [ns-mac-qos] size =    0
                   NS IPV4 VLAN QoS [ns-vqos] size =  256
              NS IPV6 VLAN QoS [ns-ipv6-vqos] size =    0
                NS MAC VLAN QoS [ns-mac-vqos] size =    0
                    NS IPV4 L3 QoS [ns-l3qos] size =  256
               NS IPV6 L3 QoS [ns-ipv6-l3qos] size =    0
                 NS MAC L3 QoS [ns-mac-l3qos] size =    0
            VPC Convergence [vpc-convergence] size =  512
               IPSG SMAC-IP bind table [ipsg] size =    0
            Ingress ARP-Ether ACL [arp-ether] size =    0
```

This example shows how to revert to the default RACL TCAM region size:

```
switch(config)# no hardware profile tcam region racl 512
[SUCCESS] New tcam size will be applicable only at boot time.
You need to 'copy run start' and 'reload'
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config)# reload
WARNING: This command will reboot the system
Do you want to continue? (y/n) [n] y
```

Configuring TCAM Carving

The default TCAM region configuration varies by platform and does not accommodate all TCAM regions. To enable any desired regions, you must decrease the TCAM size of one region and then increase the TCAM size for the desired region.

Note For information on configuring QoS TCAM carving, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*.

The following tables list the default sizes for the ingress and egress TCAM regions on different platforms.

Table 15: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Ingress) - For Cisco Nexus 9500 Series Switches

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	1536	1	1536
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	256	2	512
SPAN	256	1	256
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
vPC convergence	512	1	512
			4K

Table 16: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Egress) - For Cisco Nexus 9500 Series Switches

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	768	1	768
System	256	1	256
			1K

Table 17: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Ingress) - For Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 port ACL	512	1	512
IPv4 port QoS	256	2	512
IPv4 VACL	512	1	512
IPv4 RACL	512	1	512
SPAN	256	1	256
CoPP	256	2	512

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 port QoS for ACI leaf line card	256	1	256
IPv4 VLAN QoS for ACI leaf line card	256	1	256
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS for ACI leaf line card	256	1	256
System	256	2	512
Redirect	512	1	512
vPC convergence	256	1	256
			4K

Table 18: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Egress) - For Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 VACL	512	1	512
IPv4 RACL	256	1	256
System	256	1	256
			1K

The following example sets the IPv6 RACL TCAM size to 256 on a Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switch. An IPv6 RACL of size 256 takes 512 entries because IPv6 is double wide.

Note Follow a similar procedure to modify the TCAM settings for a different region or to modify the TCAM settings on a different device.

To set the size of the ingress IPv6 RACL TCAM region on a Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switch, perform one of two options.

Option #1

Reduce the ingress IPv4 RACL by 1024 entries (1536 - 1024 = 512) and add an ingress IPv6 RACL with 512 entries—This option is preferred.

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region racl 512
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 19: Updated TCAM Region Configuration After Reducing the IPv4 RACL (Ingress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	1024	1	1024
IPv6 RACL	256	2	1024[1]

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	256	2	512
SPAN	256	1	256
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
vPC convergence	512	1	512
			4K

[1] 2 x 512 entry slices are allocated due to the non-availability of 256 entry slices.

Option #2

Remove IPv4 Layer 3 QoS by reducing its size to 0 and add an ingress IPv6 RACL—This option is available if you are not using IPv4 Layer 3 QoS.

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region l3qos 0
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 20: Updated TCAM Region Configuration After Removing Layer 3 QoS (Ingress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	1536	1	1536
IPv6 RACL	256	2	512
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	0	2	0
SPAN	256	1	256
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
vPC convergence	512	1	512
			4K

To enable an egress IPv6 RACL of size 256, reduce the egress IPv4 RACL to 256 and add the egress IPv6 RACL:

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region e-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region e-ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 21: Default TCAM Region Configuration After Reducing the IPv4 RACL (Egress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	256	1	256
IPv6 RACL	256	2	512
System	256	1	256
			1K

After you adjust the TCAM region sizes, enter the **show hardware access-list tcam region** command to display the TCAM sizes that will be applicable on the next reload of the device.

Attention To keep all modules synchronized, you must reload all line card modules or enter **copy running-config startup-config** + **reload** to reload the device. Multiple TCAM region configurations require only a single reload. You can wait until you complete all of your TCAM region configurations before you reload the device.

Depending on the configuration, you might exceed the TCAM size or run out of slices.

If you exceed the 4K ingress limit for all TCAM regions when you configure a TCAM region, the following message appears:

```
ERROR: Aggregate TCAM region configuration exceeded the available Ingress TCAM space. Please
 re-configure.
```

If you exceed the number of slices, the following message appears:

```
ERROR: Aggregate TCAM region configuration exceeded the available Ingress TCAM slices.
Please re-configure.
```

If you exceed the 1K egress limit for all TCAM regions when you configure a TCAM region, the following message appears:

```
ERROR: Aggregate TCAM region configuration exceeded the available Egress TCAM space. Please
 re-configure.
```

If TCAM for a particular feature is not configured and you try to apply a feature that requires TCAM carving, the following message appears:

```
 ERROR: Module
x
 returned status: TCAM region is not configured. Please configure TCAM
region and retry the command.
```

Note The default redirect TCAM region size of 256 might not be sufficient if you are running many BFD or DHCP relay sessions. To accommodate more BFD or DHCP relay sessions, you might need to increase the TCAM size to 512 or greater.

Related Topics

Configuring ACL TCAM Region Sizes, on page 180

Configuring TCAM Carving - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The default TCAM region configuration does not accommodate IPv6 router ACLs (RACLs). To enable IPv6 RACLs, you must decrease the TCAM size of another region and then increase the TCAM size for the IPv6 RACLs region.

Note For information on configuring QoS TCAM carving, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*.

The following tables list the default sizes for the ingress and egress TCAM regions.

Table 22: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Ingress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	2048	1	2048
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	256	2	512
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
			4K

Table 23: Default TCAM Region Configuration (Egress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	768	1	768
System	256	1	256
			1K

To set the size of the ingress IPv6 RACL TCAM region, perform one of two options.

Note This example sets the IPv6 RACL TCAM size to 256. An IPv6 RACL of size 256 takes 512 entries because IPv6 is double wide.

Option #1

Reduce the ingress IPv4 RACL by 512 entries (2048 - 512 = 1536) and add an ingress IPv6 RACL with 512 entries—This option is preferred.

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region racl 1536
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 24: Updated TCAM Region Configuration After Reducing the IPv4 RACL (Ingress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	1536	1	1536
IPv6 RACL	256	2	512
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	256	2	512
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
			4K

Option #2

Remove IPv4 L3 QoS by reducing its size to 0 and add an ingress IPv6 RACL—This option is available if you are not using Layer 3 QoS.

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region l3qos 0
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 25: Updated TCAM Region Configuration After Removing Layer 3 QoS (Ingress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	2048	1	2048
IPv6 RACL	256	2	512
IPv4 Layer 3 QoS	0	2	0
CoPP	256	2	512
System	256	2	512
Redirect	256	1	256
			4K

To enable an egress IPv6 RACL of size 256, reduce the egress IPv4 RACL to 256 and add the egress IPv6 RACL:

```
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region e-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
switch(config)# hardware access-list tcam region e-ipv6-racl 256
Warning: Please reload the linecard for the configuration to take effect
```

Table 26: Default TCAM Region Configuration After Reducing the IPv4 RACL (Egress)

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
IPv4 RACL	256	1	256
IPv6 RACL	256	2	512

Region Name	Size	Width	Total Size
System	256	1	256
			1K

After you adjust the TCAM region sizes, enter the **show hardware access-list tcam region** command to display the TCAM sizes that will be applicable on the next reload of the device.

Attention To keep all modules synchronized, you must reload all line card modules or enter **copy running-config startup-config** + **reload** to reload the device. Multiple TCAM region configurations require only a single reload. You can wait until you complete all of your TCAM region configurations before you reload the device.

If you exceed the 4K ingress limit for all TCAM regions when you configure a TCAM region, the following message appears:

```
ERROR: Aggregate TCAM region configuration exceeded the available Ingress TCAM space. Please
 re-configure.
```

If you exceed the 1K egress limit for all TCAM regions when you configure a TCAM region, the following message appears:

```
ERROR: Aggregate TCAM region configuration exceeded the available Egress TCAM space. Please
 re-configure.
```

If TCAM for a particular feature is not configured and you try to apply a feature that requires TCAM carving, the following message appears:

```
 ERROR: Module
x
 returned status: TCAM region is not configured. Please configure TCAM
region and retry the command.
```

Note The default redirect TCAM region size of 256 might not be sufficient if you are running many BFD or DHCP relay sessions. To accommodate more BFD or DHCP relay sessions, you might need to increase the TCAM size to 512 or greater.

Applying an IP ACL as a Router ACL

You can apply an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to any of the following types of interfaces:

- Physical Layer 3 interfaces and subinterfaces
- Layer 3 Ethernet port-channel interfaces
- VLAN interfaces
- Management interfaces

ACLs applied to these interface types are considered router ACLs.

Note Egress router ACLs are not supported on subinterfaces and on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switch uplink ports.

Before you begin

Ensure that the ACL you want to apply exists and that it is configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*[**.** *number*]
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
   - **interface vlan** *vlan-id*
   - **interface mgmt** *port*
3. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **ip access-group** *access-list* {**in** | **out**}
   - **ipv6 traffic-filter** *access-list* {**in** | **out**}
4. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*[**.** *number*]
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
	• **interface vlan** *vlan-id*
	• **interface mgmt** *port*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		Enters configuration mode for the interface type that you specified.

Step 3	Enter one of the following commands: • **ip access-group** *access-list* {**in**	**out**} • **ipv6 traffic-filter** *access-list* {**in**	**out**} **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ip access-group acl1 in`	Applies an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to the Layer 3 interface for traffic flowing in the direction specified. You can apply one router ACL per direction.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Creating an IP ACL, on page 173

Applying an IP ACL as a Port ACL

You can apply an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to a Layer 2 interface, which can be a physical port or a port channel. ACLs applied to these interface types are considered port ACLs.

Note If the interface is configured with the **mac packet-classify** command, you cannot apply an IP port ACL to the interface until you remove the **mac packet-classify** command from the interface configuration.

Before you begin

Ensure that the ACL you want to apply exists and that it is configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot/port*
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
3. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **ip port access-group** *access-list* **in**
   - **ipv6 port traffic-filter** *access-list* **in**
4. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure terminal** **Example:**	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch# configure terminal` `switch(config)#`	

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot/port*
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		Enters configuration mode for the interface type that you specified.

Step 3	Enter one of the following commands: • **ip port access-group** *access-list* **in** • **ipv6 port traffic-filter** *access-list* **in** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ip port access-group acl-l2-marketing-group in`	Applies an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to the interface or port channel. Only inbound filtering is supported with port ACLs. You can apply one port ACL to an interface.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Creating an IP ACL, on page 173
Enabling or Disabling MAC Packet Classification, on page 217

Applying an IP ACL as a VACL

You can apply an IP ACL as a VACL.

Related Topics

Configuring VACLs, on page 224

Configuring IPv4 ACL Logging

To configure the IPv4 ACL logging process, you first create the access list, then enable filtering of IPv4 traffic on an interface using the specified ACL, and finally configure the ACL logging process parameters.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ip access-list** *name*

3. {**permit** | **deny**} **ip** *source-address destination-address* **log**
4. **exit**
5. **interface ethernet** *slot/port*
6. **ip access-group** *name* **in**
7. **exit**
8. **logging ip access-list cache interval** *interval*
9. **logging ip access-list cache entries** *number-of-flows*
10. **logging ip access-list cache threshold** *threshold*
11. **hardware rate-limiter access-list-log** *packets*
12. **acllog match-log-level** *severity-level*
13. (Optional) **show logging ip access-list cache** [**detail**]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**ip access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# ip access-list logging-test`
	`switch(config-acl)#`
		Creates an IPv4 ACL and enters IP ACL configuration mode. The *name* argument can be up to 64 characters.

Step 3	{**permit** | **deny**} **ip** *source-address destination-address* **log** **Example:** `switch(config-acl)# permit ip any 10.30.30.0/24 log`	Creates an ACL rule that permits or denies IPv4 traffic matching its conditions. To enable the system to generate an informational logging message about each packet that matches the rule, you must include the **log** keyword. The *source-address* and *destination-address* arguments can be the IP address with a network wildcard, the IP address and variable-length subnet mask, the host address, or **any** to designate any address.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-acl)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Updates the configuration and exits IP ACL configuration mode.

Step 5	**interface ethernet** *slot/port*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/1`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		Enters interface configuration mode.

Step 6	**ip access-group** *name* **in** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ip access-group logging-test in`	Enables the filtering of IPv4 traffic on an interface using the specified ACL. You can apply an ACL to inbound traffic.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 7	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Updates the configuration and exits interface configuration mode.

Step 8	**logging ip access-list cache interval** *interval* **Example:** `switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache interval 490`	Configures the log-update interval (in seconds) for the ACL logging process. The default value is 300 seconds. The range is from 5 to 86400 seconds.
Step 9	**logging ip access-list cache entries** *number-of-flows* **Example:** `switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache entries 8001`	Specifies the maximum number of flows to be monitored by the ACL logging process. The default value is 8000. The range of values supported is from 0 to 1048576.
Step 10	**logging ip access-list cache threshold** *threshold* **Example:** `switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache threshold 490`	If the specified number of packets is logged before the expiry of the alert interval, the system generates a syslog message.
Step 11	**hardware rate-limiter access-list-log** *packets* **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter access-list-log 200`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for packets copied to the supervisor module for ACL logging. The range is from 0 to 30000.
Step 12	**acllog match-log-level** *severity-level* **Example:** `switch(config)# acllog match-log-level 5`	Specifies the minimum severity level to log ACL matches. The default is 6 (informational). The range is from 0 (emergency) to 7 (debugging).
Step 13	(Optional) **show logging ip access-list cache** [**detail**] **Example:** `switch(config)# show logging ip access-list cache`	Displays information on the active logged flows, such as source IP and destination IP addresses, source port and destination port information, source interfaces, and so on.

Verifying the IP ACL Configuration

To display IP ACL configuration information, perform one of the following tasks.

Command	Purpose
show hardware access-list tcam region	Displays the TCAM sizes that will be applicable on the next reload of the device.
show ip access-lists	Displays the IPv4 ACL configuration.

Command	Purpose
show ipv6 access-lists	Displays the IPv6 ACL configuration.
show logging ip access-list cache [**detail**]	Displays information on the active logged flows, such as source IP and destination IP addresses, source port and destination port information, and source interfaces.
show logging ip access-list status	Displays the deny maximum flow count, the current effective log interval, and the current effective threshold value.
show running-config acllog	Displays the ACL log running configuration.
show running-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL running configuration, including the IP ACL configuration and the interfaces to which IP ACLs are applied. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the running configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the running configuration.
show startup-config acllog	Displays the ACL log startup configuration.
show startup-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL startup configuration. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration.

Monitoring and Clearing IP ACL Statistics

To monitor or clear IP ACL statistics, use one of the commands in this table.

Command	Purpose
show ip access-lists	Displays the IPv4 ACL configuration. If the IPv4 ACL includes the **statistics per-entry** command, the **show ip access-lists** command output includes the number of packets that have matched each rule.
show ipv6 access-lists	Displays IPv6 ACL configuration. If the IPv6 ACL includes the **statistics per-entry** command, then the **show ipv6 access-lists** command output includes the number of packets that have matched each rule.
clear ip access-list counters	Clears statistics for all IPv4 ACLs or for a specific IPv4 ACL.
clear ipv6 access-list counters	Clears statistics for all IPv6 ACLs or for a specific IPv6 ACL.

Configuration Examples for IP ACLs

The following example shows how to create an IPv4 ACL named acl-01 and apply it as a port ACL to Ethernet interface 2/1, which is a Layer 2 interface:

```
ip access-list acl-01
  permit ip 192.168.2.0/24 any
interface ethernet 2/1
  ip port access-group acl-01 in
```

The following example shows how to create an IPv6 ACL named acl-120 and apply it as a router ACL to Ethernet interface 2/3, which is a Layer 3 interface:

```
ipv6 access-list acl-120
  permit tcp 2001:0db8:85a3::/48 2001:0db8:be03:2112::/64
  permit udp 2001:0db8:85a3::/48 2001:0db8:be03:2112::/64
  permit tcp 2001:0db8:69f2::/48 2001:0db8:be03:2112::/64
  permit udp 2001:0db8:69f2::/48 2001:0db8:be03:2112::/64
interface ethernet 2/3
  ipv6 traffic-filter acl-120 in
```

The following example shows how to create a VTY ACL named single-source and apply it on input IP traffic over the VTY line. This ACL allows all TCP traffic through and drops all other IP traffic:

```
ip access-list single-source
  permit tcp 192.168.7.5/24 any
  exit
  line vty
  ip access-class single-source in
  show ip access-lists
```

The following example shows how to configure IPv4 ACL logging:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ip access-list logging-test
```

```
switch(config-acl)# permit ip any 2001:DB8:1::1/64 log
switch(config-acl)# exit
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-if)# ip access-group logging-test in
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache interval 400
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache entries 100
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache threshold 900
switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter access-list-log 200
switch(config)# acllog match-log-level 5
```

Configuring Object Groups

You can use object groups to specify source and destination addresses and protocol ports in IPv4 ACL and IPv6 ACL rules.

Session Manager Support for Object Groups

Session Manager supports the configuration of object groups. This feature allows you to create a configuration session and verify your object group configuration changes prior to committing them to the running configuration. For more information about Session Manager, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide*.

Creating and Changing an IPv4 Address Object Group

You can create and change an IPv4 address group object.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **object-group ip address** *name*
3. Enter one of the following commands:
   - [*sequence-number*] **host** *IPv4-address*
   - [*sequence-number*] *IPv4-address*/*prefix-len*
   - [*sequence-number*] *IPv4-address network-wildcard*
4. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **no** [*sequence-number*]
   - **no host** *IPv4-address*
   - **no** *IPv4-address*/*prefix-len*
   - **no** *IPv4-address network-wildcard*
5. (Optional) **show object-group** *name*
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**object-group ip address** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# object-group ip address ipv4-addr-group-13`
	`switch(config-ipaddr-ogroup)#`
		Creates the IPv4 address object group and enters IPv4 address object-group configuration mode.

Step 3	Enter one of the following commands: • [*sequence-number*] **host** *IPv4-address* • [*sequence-number*] *IPv4-address*/*prefix-len* • [*sequence-number*] *IPv4-address network-wildcard* **Example:** `switch(config-ipaddr-ogroup)# host 10.99.32.6`	Creates an entry in the object group. For each entry that you want to create, use the **host** command and specify a single host, or omit the **host** command to specify a network of hosts. You can specify a prefix length for an IPv4 object group, which matches only on the first contiguous bits, or you can specify a wildcard mask, which matches on any bit in the address.
Step 4	Enter one of the following commands: • **no** [*sequence-number*] • **no host** *IPv4-address* • **no** *IPv4-address*/*prefix-len* • **no** *IPv4-address network-wildcard* **Example:** `switch(config-ipaddr-ogroup)# no host 10.99.32.6`	Removes an entry in the object group. For each entry that you want to remove from the object group, use the **no** form of the **host** command.
Step 5	(Optional) **show object-group** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-ipaddr-ogroup)# show object-group ipv4-addr-group-13`	Displays the object group configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-ipaddr-ogroup)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Creating and Changing an IPv6 Address Object Group

You can create and change an IPv6 address group object.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**

2. **object-group ipv6 address** *name*
3. Enter one of the following commands:
   - [*sequence-number*] **host** *IPv6-address*
   - [*sequence-number*] *IPv6-address*/*prefix-len*
4. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **no** *sequence-number*
   - **no host** *IPv6-address*
   - **no** *IPv6-address*/*prefix-len*
5. (Optional) **show object-group** *name*
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**object-group ipv6 address** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# object-group ipv6 address ipv6-addr-group-A7`
	`switch(config-ipv6addr-ogroup)#`
		Creates the IPv6 address object group and enters IPv6 address object-group configuration mode.

Step 3	Enter one of the following commands: • [*sequence-number*] **host** *IPv6-address* • [*sequence-number*] *IPv6-address*/*prefix-len* **Example:** `switch(config-ipv6addr-ogroup)# host 2001:db8:0:3ab0::1`	Creates an entry in the object group. For each entry that you want to create, use the **host** command and specify a single host, or omit the **host** command to specify a network of hosts. You can specify a prefix length for an IPv6 object group, which matches only on the first contiguous bits
Step 4	Enter one of the following commands: • **no** *sequence-number* • **no host** *IPv6-address* • **no** *IPv6-address*/*prefix-len* **Example:** `switch(config-ipv6addr-ogroup)# no host 2001:db8:0:3ab0::1`	Removes an entry from the object group. For each entry that you want to remove from the object group, use the **no** form of the **host** command.
Step 5	(Optional) **show object-group** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-ipv6addr-ogroup)# show object-group ipv6-addr-group-A7`	Displays the object group configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-ipv6addr-ogroup)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Creating and Changing a Protocol Port Object Group

You can create and change a protocol port object group.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **object-group ip port** *name*
3. [*sequence-number*] *operator port-number* [*port-number*]
4. **no** {*sequence-number* | *operator port-number* [*port-number*]}
5. (Optional) **show object-group** *name*
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**object-group ip port** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# object-group ip port NYC-datacenter-ports`
	`switch(config-port-ogroup)#`
		Creates the protocol port object group and enters port object-group configuration mode.

Step 3	[*sequence-number*] *operator port-number* [*port-number*] **Example:** `switch(config-port-ogroup)# eq 80`	Creates an entry in the object group. For each entry that you want to create, use one of the following operator commands: • **eq**—Matches only the port number that you specify. • **gt**—Matches port numbers that are greater than (and not equal to) the port number that you specify. • **lt**—Matches port numbers that are less than (and not equal to) the port number that you specify. • **neq**—Matches all port numbers except for the port number that you specify.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• **range**—Matches the range of port numbers between and including the two port numbers that you specify. **Note** The **range** command is the only operator command that requires two *port-number* arguments.
Step 4	**no** {*sequence-number* | *operator port-number* [*port-number*]} **Example:** `switch(config-port-ogroup)# no eq 80`	Removes an entry from the object group. For each entry that you want to remove, use the **no** form of the applicable operator command.
Step 5	(Optional) **show object-group** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-port-ogroup)# show object-group NYC-datacenter-ports`	Displays the object group configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-port-ogroup)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Removing an Object Group

You can remove an IPv4 address object group, an IPv6 address object group, or a protocol port object group.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no object-group** {**ip address** | **ipv6 address** | **ip port**} *name*
3. (Optional) **show object-group**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no object-group** {**ip address** | **ipv6 address** | **ip port**} *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# no object-group ip address ipv4-addr-group-A7`	Removes the specified object group.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	(Optional) **show object-group** **Example:** `switch(config)# show object-group`	Displays all object groups. The removed object group should not appear.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the Object-Group Configuration

To display object-group configuration information, enter one of the following commands:

Command	Purpose
show object-group	Displays the object-group configuration.
show {**ip** | **ipv6**} **access-lists** *name* [**expanded**]	Displays expanded statistics for the ACL configuration.
show running-config aclmgr	Displays the ACL configuration, including object groups.

Configuring Time-Ranges

Session Manager Support for Time-Ranges

Session Manager supports the configuration of time ranges. This feature allows you to create a configuration session and verify your time-range configuration changes prior to committing them to the running configuration. For more information about Session Manager, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide*.

Creating a Time-Range

You can create a time range on the device and add rules to it.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **time-range** *name*
3. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *weekday time* **to** [*weekday*] *time*
4. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *list-of-weekdays time* **to** *time*
5. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute start** *time date* [**end** *time date*]
6. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute** [start *time date*] **end** *time date*
7. (Optional) **show time-range** *name*
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**time-range** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# time-range workday-daytime`
	`switch(config-time-range)#`
		Creates the time range and enters time-range configuration mode.

Step 3	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *weekday time* **to** [*weekday*] *time* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# periodic monday 00:00:00 to friday 23:59:59`	Creates a periodic rule that is in effect for one or more contiguous days between and including the specified start and end days and times.
Step 4	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *list-of-weekdays time* **to** *time* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# periodic weekdays 06:00:00 to 20:00:00`	Creates a periodic rule that is in effect on the days specified by the *list-of-weekdays* argument between and including the specified start and end times. The following keywords are also valid values for the *list-of-weekdays* argument: • **daily** —All days of the week. • **weekdays** —Monday through Friday. • **weekend** —Saturday through Sunday.
Step 5	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute start** *time date* [**end** *time date*] **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# absolute start 1:00 15 march 2013`	Creates an absolute rule that is in effect beginning at the time and date specified after the **start** keyword. If you omit the **end** keyword, the rule is always in effect after the start time and date have passed.
Step 6	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute** [start *time date*] **end** *time date* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# absolute end 23:59:59 31 may 2013`	Creates an absolute rule that is in effect until the time and date specified after the **end** keyword. If you omit the **start** keyword, the rule is always in effect until the end time and date have passed.
Step 7	(Optional) **show time-range** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# show time-range workday-daytime`	Displays the time-range configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-time-range)# copy running-config startup-config`	

Changing a Time-Range

You can add and remove rules in an existing time range. You cannot change existing rules. Instead, to change a rule, you can remove it and recreate it with the desired changes.

If you need to add more rules between existing rules than the current sequence numbering allows, you can use the **resequence** command to reassign sequence numbers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **time-range** *name*
3. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *weekday time* **to** [*weekday*] *time*
4. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *list-of-weekdays time* **to** *time*
5. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute start** *time date* [**end** *time date*]
6. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute** [**start** *time date*] **end** *time date*
7. (Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | **periodic** *arguments . . .* | **absolute** *arguments. . .*}
8. (Optional) **show time-range** *name*
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**time-range** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# time-range workday-daytime`
	`switch(config-time-range)#`
		Enters time-range configuration mode for the specified time range.

Step 3	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *weekday time* **to** [*weekday*] *time* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# periodic monday 00:00:00 to friday 23:59:59`	Creates a periodic rule that is in effect for one or more contiguous days between and including the specified start and end days and times.
Step 4	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **periodic** *list-of-weekdays time* **to** *time* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# 100 periodic weekdays 05:00:00 to 22:00:00`	Creates a periodic rule that is in effect on the days specified by the *list-of-weekdays* argument between and including the specified start and end times. The following keywords are also valid values for the *list-of-weekdays* argument: • **daily** —All days of the week.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• **weekdays** —Monday through Friday. • **weekend** —Saturday through Sunday.
Step 5	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute start** *time date* [**end** *time date*] **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# absolute start 1:00 15 march 2013`	Creates an absolute rule that is in effect beginning at the time and date specified after the **start** keyword. If you omit the **end** keyword, the rule is always in effect after the start time and date have passed.
Step 6	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] **absolute** [**start** *time date*] **end** *time date* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# absolute end 23:59:59 31 may 2013`	Creates an absolute rule that is in effect until the time and date specified after the **end** keyword. If you omit the **start** keyword, the rule is always in effect until the end time and date have passed.
Step 7	(Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | **periodic** *arguments* . . . | **absolute** *arguments*. . .} **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# no 80`	Removes the specified rule from the time range.
Step 8	(Optional) **show time-range** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# show time-range workday-daytime`	Displays the time-range configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Changing Sequence Numbers in a Time Range, on page 209

Removing a Time-Range

You can remove a time range from the device.

Before you begin

Ensure that you know whether the time range is used in any ACL rules. The device allows you to remove time ranges that are used in ACL rules. Removing a time range that is in use in an ACL rule does not affect the configuration of interfaces where you have applied the ACL. Instead, the device considers the ACL rule using the removed time range to be empty.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**

2. **no time-range** *name*
3. (Optional) **show time-range**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no time-range** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# no time-range daily-workhours`	Removes the time range that you specified by name.
Step 3	(Optional) **show time-range** **Example:** `switch(config-time-range)# show time-range`	Displays the configuration for all time ranges. The removed time range should not appear.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing Sequence Numbers in a Time Range

You can change all the sequence numbers assigned to rules in a time range.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **resequence time-range** *name starting-sequence-number increment*
3. (Optional) **show time-range** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

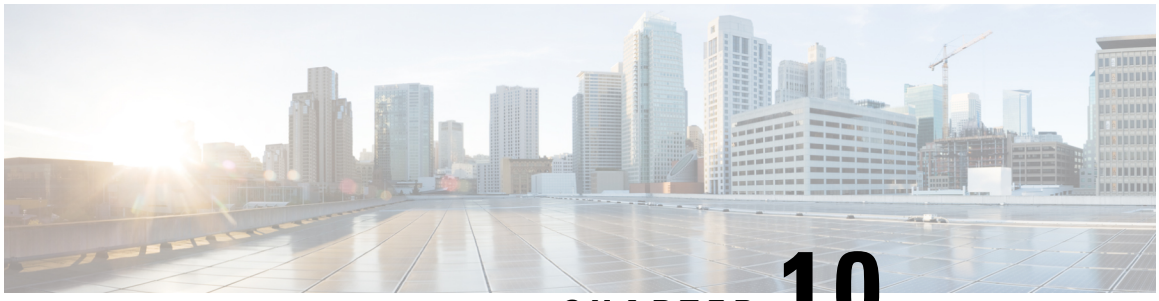
Step 2	**resequence time-range** *name starting-sequence-number increment* **Example:**	Assigns sequence numbers to the rules contained in the time range, where the first rule receives the starting sequence number that you specify. Each subsequent rule receives a

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# resequence time-range daily-workhours 100 10` `switch(config)#`	number larger than the preceding rule. The difference in numbers is determined by the increment that you specify.
Step 3	(Optional) **show time-range** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# show time-range daily-workhours`	Displays the time-range configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the Time-Range Configuration

To display time-range configuration information, perform one of the following tasks.

Command	Purpose
show time-range	Displays the time-range configuration.
show running-config aclmgr	Displays ACL configuration, including all time ranges.



CHAPTER 10

Configuring MAC ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure MAC access lists (ACLs) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter contains the following sections:

About MAC ACLs

MAC ACLs are ACLs that use information in the Layer 2 header of packets to filter traffic. MAC ACLs share many fundamental concepts with IP ACLs, including support for virtualization.

MAC Packet Classification

MAC packet classification allows you to control whether a MAC ACL that is on a Layer 2 interface applies to all traffic entering the interface, including IP traffic, or to non-IP traffic only.

MAC Packet Classification State	Effect on Interface
Enabled	• A MAC ACL that is on the interface applies to all traffic entering the interface, including IP traffic. • You cannot apply an IP port ACL on the interface.
Disabled	• A MAC ACL that is on the interface applies only to non-IP traffic entering the interface. • You can apply an IP port ACL on the interface

Licensing Requirements for MAC ACLs

This table shows the licensing requirements for this feature.

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	MAC ACLs require no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for MAC ACLs

MAC ACLs have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- MAC ACLs apply to ingress traffic only.
- If you try to apply too many ACL entries, the configuration might be rejected.
- MAC packet classification is not supported when a MAC ACL is applied as part of a VACL.
- MAC packet classification is not supported when MAC ACLs are used as match criteria for QoS policies on Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switch 40G uplink ports.
- When you define a MAC ACL on the non EX/FX Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches, you must define the ethertype for the traffic to be appropriately matched.
- Mac-packet classify knob is partially supported on the Cisco Nexus 9300-EX platform switches. In the absence of a direct field for marking the packet as an L2 packet, the switches match all packets with certain fields, such as src_mac, dst_mac, and vlan in the key field. However, they cannot match on the eth_type field. Therefore, if you install two rules with identical fields, except the MAC protocol number field, then the match conditions will remain identical in the hardware. Hence, although the first entry in the rule sequence will hit for all the packets for all the protocol numbers, the MAC protocol number will be a no-op when the mac-packet classify is configured.

Default Settings for MAC ACLs

This table lists the default settings for MAC ACL parameters.

Table 27: Default MAC ACLs Parameters

Parameters	Default
MAC ACLs	No MAC ACLs exist by default
ACL rules	Implicit rules apply to all ACLs

Configuring MAC ACLs

Creating a MAC ACL

You can create a MAC ACL and add rules to it.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **mac access-list** *name*
3. {**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol*
4. (Optional) **statistics per-entry**
5. (Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name*
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**mac access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# mac access-list acl-mac-01`
	`switch(config-mac-acl)#`
		Creates the MAC ACL and enters ACL configuration mode.

Step 3	{**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol* **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# 100 permit mac 00c0.4f00.0000 0000.00ff.ffff any 0x0806`	Creates a rule in the MAC ACL. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic.
Step 4	(Optional) **statistics per-entry** **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# statistics per-entry`	Specifies that the device maintains global statistics for packets that match the rules in the ACL.
Step 5	(Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# show mac access-lists acl-mac-01`	Displays the MAC ACL configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing a MAC ACL

You can remove a MAC ACL from the device.

Before you begin

Use the **show mac access-lists** command with the **summary** keyword to find the interfaces on which a MAC ACL is configured.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **mac access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol*
4. (Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | {**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol*}
5. (Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry**
6. (Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name*
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**mac access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# mac access-list acl-mac-01`
	`switch(config-mac-acl)#`
		Enters ACL configuration mode for the ACL that you specify by name.

Step 3	(Optional) [*sequence-number*] {**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol* **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# 100 permit mac 00c0.4f00.0000 0000.00ff.ffff any 0x0806`	Creates a rule in the MAC ACL. Using a sequence number allows you to specify a position for the rule in the ACL. Without a sequence number, the rule is added to the end of the rules. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic.
Step 4	(Optional) **no** {*sequence-number* | {**permit** | **deny**} *source destination-protocol*} **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# no 80`	Removes the rule that you specify from the MAC ACL. The **permit** and **deny** commands support many ways of identifying traffic.
Step 5	(Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry** **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# statistics per-entry`	Specifies that the device maintains global statistics for packets that match the rules in the ACL. The **no** option stops the device from maintaining global statistics for the ACL.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	(Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# show mac access-lists acl-mac-01`	Displays the MAC ACL configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-mac-acl)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing Sequence Numbers in a MAC ACL

You can change all the sequence numbers assigned to rules in a MAC ACL. Resequencing is useful when you need to insert rules into an ACL and there are not enough available sequence numbers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **resequence mac access-list** *name starting-sequence-number increment*
3. (Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**resequence mac access-list** *name starting-sequence-number increment* **Example:** `switch(config)# resequence mac access-list acl-mac-01 100 10`	Assigns sequence numbers to the rules contained in the ACL, where the first rule receives the number specified by the starting-sequence number that you specify. Each subsequent rule receives a number larger than the preceding rule. The difference in numbers is determined by the increment number that you specify.
Step 3	(Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# show mac access-lists acl-mac-01`	Displays the MAC ACL configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Removing a MAC ACL

You can remove a MAC ACL from the device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no mac access-list** *name*
3. (Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name* **summary**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no mac access-list** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# no mac access-list acl-mac-01`
	`switch(config)#`
		Removes the MAC ACL that you specify by name from the running configuration.

Step 3	(Optional) **show mac access-lists** *name* **summary** **Example:** `switch(config)# show mac access-lists acl-mac-01 summary`	Displays the MAC ACL configuration. If the ACL remains applied to an interface, the command lists the interfaces.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Applying a MAC ACL as a Port ACL

You can apply a MAC ACL as a port ACL to any of the following interface types:

- Layer 2 Ethernet interfaces
- Layer 2 port-channel interfaces

Before you begin

Ensure that the ACL that you want to apply exists and is configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**

2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
3. **mac port access-group** *access-list*
4. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1`
	`switch(config-if)#`
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface port-channel 5`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		• Enters interface configuration mode for a Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface.
		• Enters interface configuration mode for a Layer 2 or Layer 3 port-channel interface.

Step 3	**mac port access-group** *access-list* **Example:** `switch(config-if)# mac port access-group acl-01`	Applies a MAC ACL to the interface.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Applying a MAC ACL as a VACL

You can apply a MAC ACL as a VACL.

Enabling or Disabling MAC Packet Classification

You can enable or disable MAC packet classification on a Layer 2 interface.

Before you begin

The interface must be configured as a Layer 2 interface.

Note If the interface is configured with the **ip port access-group** command or the **ipv6 port traffic-filter** command, you cannot enable MAC packet classification until you remove the **ip port access-group** and **ipv6 port traffic-filter** commands from the interface configuration.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
3. [**no**] **mac packet-classify**
4. (Optional) Enter one of the following commands:
   - **show running-config interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
   - **show running-config interface port-channel** *channel-number*
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Enter one of the following commands:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-number*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1`
	`switch(config-if)#`
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface port-channel 5`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		• Enters interface configuration mode for an Ethernet interface.
		• Enters interface configuration mode for a port-channel interface.

Step 3	[**no**] **mac packet-classify** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# mac packet-classify`	Enables MAC packet classification on the interface. The **no** option disables MAC packet classification on the interface.
Step 4	(Optional) Enter one of the following commands: • **show running-config interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*	• Displays the running configuration of the Ethernet interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose

	• **show running-config interface port-channel** *channel-number*
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# show running-config interface ethernet 2/1`
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# show running-config interface port-channel 5`
		• Displays the running configuration of the port-channel interface.

Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the MAC ACL Configuration

To display MAC ACL configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show mac access-lists	Displays the MAC ACL configuration.
show running-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL configuration, including MAC ACLs and the interfaces to which MAC ACLs are applied. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the running configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the running configuration.
show startup-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL startup configuration. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration.

Monitoring and Clearing MAC ACL Statistics

To monitor or clear MAC ACL statistics, use one of the commands in this table.

Command	Purpose
show mac access-lists	Displays the MAC ACL configuration. If the MAC ACL includes the **statistics per-entry** command, the **show mac access-lists** command output includes the number of packets that have matched each rule.

Command	Purpose
clear mac access-list counters	Clears statistics for MAC ACLs.

Configuration Example for MAC ACLs

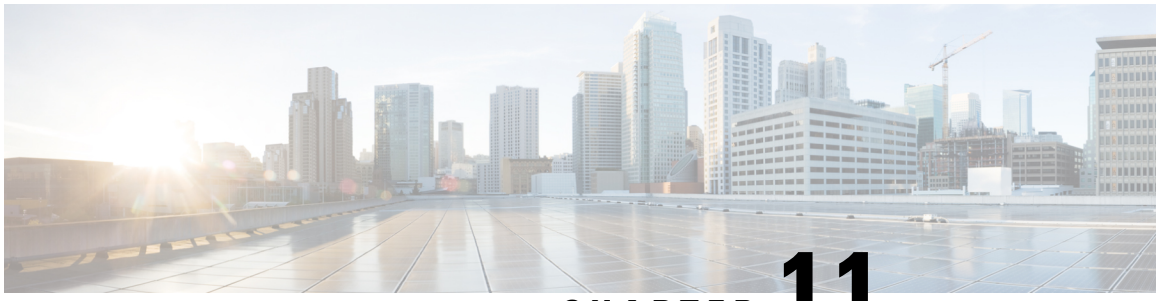
The following example shows how to create a MAC ACL named acl-mac-01 and apply it to Ethernet interface 2/1, which is a Layer 2 interface in this example:

```
mac access-list acl-mac-01
  permit 00c0.4f00.0000 0000.00ff.ffff any 0x0806
interface ethernet 2/1
  mac port access-group acl-mac-01
```

Additional References for MAC ACLs

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
TAP aggregation	Configuring TAP Aggregation and MPLS Stripping



CHAPTER 11

Configuring VLAN ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure VLAN access lists (ACLs) on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About VLAN ACLs

A VLAN ACL (VACL) is one application of an IP ACL or a MAC ACL. You can configure VACLs to apply to all packets that are routed into or out of a VLAN or are bridged within a VLAN. VACLs are strictly for security packet filtering and for redirecting traffic to specific physical interfaces. VACLs are not defined by direction (ingress or egress).

VLAN Access Maps and Entries

VACLs use access maps to contain an ordered list of one or more map entries. Each map entry associates IP or MAC ACLs to an action. Each entry has a sequence number, which allows you to control the precedence of entries.

When the device applies a VACL to a packet, it applies the action that is configured in the first access map entry that contains an ACL that permits the packet.

VACLs and Actions

In access map configuration mode, you use the **action** command to specify one of the following actions:

Forward

Sends the traffic to the destination determined by the normal operation of the device.

Redirect

Redirects the traffic to one or more specified interfaces.

Drop

Drops the traffic. If you specify drop as the action, you can also specify that the device logs the dropped packets.

VACL Statistics

The device can maintain global statistics for each rule in a VACL. If a VACL is applied to multiple VLANs, the maintained rule statistics are the sum of packet matches (hits) on all the interfaces on which that VACL is applied.

Note The device does not support interface-level VACL statistics.

For each VLAN access map that you configure, you can specify whether the device maintains statistics for that VACL. This feature allows you to turn VACL statistics on or off as needed to monitor traffic filtered by a VACL or to help troubleshoot VLAN access-map configuration.

Session Manager Support for VACLs

Session Manager supports the configuration of VACLs. This feature allows you to verify the ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration. For more information about Session Manager, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide*.

Licensing Requirements for VACLs

This table shows the licensing requirements for this feature.

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	VACLs require no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for VACLs

VACLs have the following prerequisite:

- Ensure that the IP ACL or MAC ACL that you want to use in the VACL exists and is configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

Guidelines and Limitations for VACLs

VACLs have the following configuration guidelines:

- Cisco recommends using the Session Manager to configure ACLs. This feature allows you to verify the ACL configuration and confirm that the resources required by the configuration are available prior to committing them to the running configuration. For more information about Session Manager, see the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide.
- If you try to apply too many ACL entries, the configuration might be rejected.
- VACL redirects to SPAN destination ports are not supported.
- VACL logging is not supported.
- TCAM resources are not shared when a VACL is applied to multiple VLANs.
- Deny statements are not supported on VACLs. Alternatively, you can use permit statements with the action 'drop' to achieve a similar outcome.
- When configuring a VACL with the "redirect" option, the interface that you define as the redirect interface, must be configured as a member of the VLAN which you apply this VACL to. This VLAN must also be in the forwarding state on this interface for the redirection to work. If these conditions are not met, then the switch will drop the packets which are matched by the VACL.
- VACLs are not supported on Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switches with N9K-X9636C-R, N9K-X9636C-RX, and N9K-X9636Q-R line cards.

The following guidelines apply to VACLs for VXLANs:

- VACLs applied on a VXLAN VLAN in the access to network direction (Layer 2 to Layer 3 encapsulation path) are supported on the inner payload.
- We recommend using VACLs on the access side to filter out traffic entering the overlay network.
- Egress VACLs for decapsulated VXLAN traffic are not supported.

Default Settings for VACLs

This table lists the default settings for VACL parameters.

Table 28: Default VACL Parameters

Parameters	Default
VACLs	No IP ACLs exist by default
ACL rules	Implicit rules apply to all ACLs

Configuring VACLs

Creating a VACL or Adding a VACL Entry

You can create a VACL or add entries to an existing VACL. In both cases, you create a VACL entry, which is a VLAN access-map entry that associates one or more ACLs with an action to be applied to the matching traffic.

Before you begin

Ensure that the ACLs that you want to use in the VACL exist and are configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **vlan access-map** *map-name* [*sequence-number*]
3. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **match** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **address** *ip-access-list*
   - **match mac address** *mac-access-list*
4. **action** {**drop** | **forward** | **redirect**}
5. (Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry**
6. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**vlan access-map** *map-name* [*sequence-number*]
	Example:
	`switch(config)# vlan access-map acl-mac-map`
	`switch(config-access-map)#`
		Enters VLAN access-map configuration mode for the VLAN access map specified. If the VLAN access map does not exist, the device creates it.
		If you do not specify a sequence number, the device creates a new entry whose sequence number is 10 greater than the last sequence number in the access map.

Step 3	Enter one of the following commands: • **match** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **address** *ip-access-list* • **match mac address** *mac-access-list* **Example:**	Specifies an ACL for the access-map entry.

	Command or Action	Purpose

	`switch(config-access-map)# match mac address acl-ip-lab`
	Example:
	`switch(config-access-map)# match mac address acl-mac-01`	

Step 4	**action** {**drop** | **forward** | **redirect**} **Example:** `switch(config-access-map)# action forward`	Specifies the action that the device applies to traffic that matches the ACL. The **action** command supports the **drop**, **forward**, and **redirect** options.
Step 5	(Optional) [**no**] **statistics per-entry** **Example:** `switch(config-access-map)# statistics per-entry`	Specifies that the device maintains global statistics for packets that match the rules in the VACL. The **no** option stops the device from maintaining global statistics for the VACL.
Step 6	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config-access-map)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-access-map)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Removing a VACL or a VACL Entry

You can remove a VACL, which means that you will delete the VLAN access map.

You can also remove a single VLAN access-map entry from a VACL.

Before you begin

Ensure that you know whether the VACL is applied to a VLAN. The device allows you to remove VACLs that are currently applied. Removing a VACL does not affect the configuration of VLANs where you have applied the VACL. Instead, the device considers the removed VACL to be empty.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no vlan access-map** *map-name* [*sequence-number*]
3. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no vlan access-map** *map-name* [*sequence-number*] **Example:** `switch(config)# no vlan access-map acl-mac-map 10`	Removes the VLAN access map configuration for the specified access map. If you specify the *sequence-number* argument and the VACL contains more than one entry, the command removes only the entry specified.
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Applying a VACL to a VLAN

You can apply a VACL to a VLAN.

Before you begin

If you are applying a VACL, ensure that the VACL exists and is configured to filter traffic in the manner that you need for this application.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **vlan filter** *map-name* **vlan-list** *list*
3. (Optional) **show running-config aclmgr**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **vlan filter** *map-name* **vlan-list** *list* **Example:**	Applies the VACL to the VLANs by the list that you specified. The **no** option unapplies the VACL.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# vlan filter acl-mac-map vlan-list 1-20,26-30` `switch(config)#`	
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config aclmgr** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config aclmgr`	Displays the ACL configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the VACL Configuration

To display VACL configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show running-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL configuration, including the VACL-related configuration. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the running configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the running configuration.
show startup-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the ACL startup configuration. **Note** This command displays the user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration.
show vlan filter	Displays information about VACLs that are applied to a VLAN.
show vlan access-map	Displays information about VLAN access maps.

Monitoring and Clearing VACL Statistics

To monitor or clear VACL statistics, use one of the commands in this table.

Command	Purpose
show vlan access-list	Displays the VACL configuration. If the VLAN access-map includes the **statistics per-entry** command, the **show vlan access-list** command output includes the number of packets that have matched each rule.
clear vlan access-list counters	Clears statistics for VACLs.

Configuration Example for VACLs

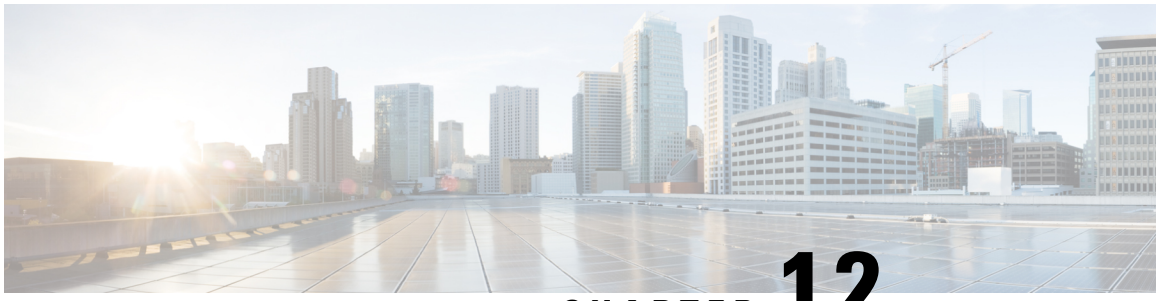
The following example shows how to configure a VACL to forward traffic permitted by a MAC ACL named acl-mac-01 and how to apply the VACL to VLANs 50 through 82:

```
conf t
vlan access-map acl-mac-map
  match mac address acl-mac-01
  action forward
vlan filter acl-mac-map vlan-list 50-82
```

Additional References for VACLs

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
QoS configuration	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*



CHAPTER 12

Configuring DHCP

This chapter describes how to configure the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) on a Cisco NX-OS device.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About the DHCP Relay Agent

DHCP Relay Agent

You can configure the device to run a DHCP relay agent, which forwards DHCP packets between clients and servers. This feature is useful when clients and servers are not on the same physical subnet. Relay agents receive DHCP messages and then generate a new DHCP message to send out on another interface. The relay agent sets the gateway address (giaddr field of the DHCP packet) and, if configured, adds the relay agent information option (Option 82) in the packet and forwards it to the DHCP server. The reply from the server is forwarded back to the client after removing Option 82.

After you enable Option 82, the device uses the binary ifindex format by default. If needed, you can change the Option 82 setting to use an encoded string format instead.

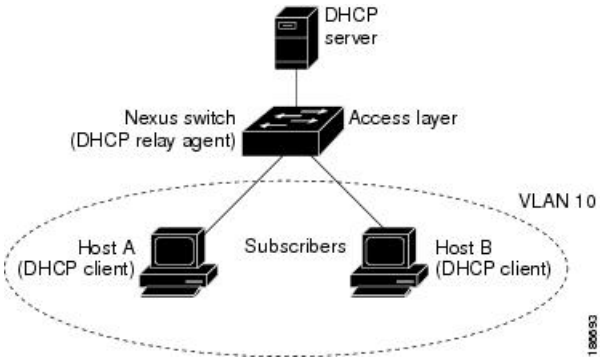
Note When the device relays a DHCP request that already includes Option 82 information, the device forwards the request with the original Option 82 information without altering it.

DHCP Relay Agent Option 82

You can enable the device to insert and remove Option 82 information on DHCP packets that are forwarded by the relay agent.

Figure 7: DHCP Relay Agent in a Metropolitan Ethernet Network

This figure shows an example of a metropolitan Ethernet network in which a centralized DHCP server assigns IP addresses to subscribers connected to the device at the access layer. Because the DHCP clients and their associated DHCP server do not reside on the same IP network or subnet, a DHCP relay agent is configured with a helper address to enable broadcast forwarding and to transfer DHCP messages between the clients and the server.

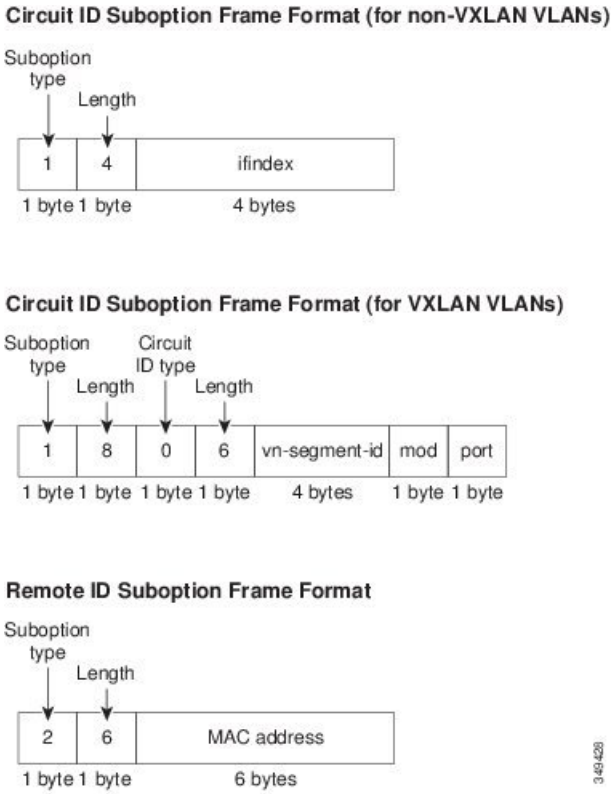


When you enable Option 82 for the DHCP relay agent on the Cisco NX-OS device, the following sequence of events occurs:

1. The host (DHCP client) generates a DHCP request and broadcasts it on the network.
2. When the Cisco NX-OS device receives the DHCP request, it adds the Option 82 information in the packet. The Option 82 information contains the device MAC address (the remote ID suboption) and the port identifier ifindex (for non-VXLAN VLANs) or vn-segment-id-mod-port (for VXLAN VLANs), from which the packet is received (the circuit ID suboption). In DHCP relay, the circuit ID is filled with the ifindex of the SVI or Layer 3 interface on which DHCP relay is configured.
3. The device adds the IP address of the relay agent to the DHCP packet.
4. The device forwards the DHCP request that includes the Option 82 field to the DHCP server.
5. The DHCP server receives the packet. If the server is Option 82 capable, it can use the remote ID, the circuit ID, or both to assign IP addresses and implement policies, such as restricting the number of IP addresses that can be assigned to a single remote ID or circuit ID. The DHCP server echoes the Option 82 field in the DHCP reply.
6. The DHCP server unicasts the reply to the Cisco NX-OS device if the request was relayed to the server by the device. The Cisco NX-OS device verifies that it originally inserted the Option 82 data by inspecting the remote ID and possibly the circuit ID fields. The Cisco NX-OS device removes the Option 82 field and forwards the packet to the interface that connects to the DHCP client that sent the DHCP request.

This figure shows the packet formats for the circuit ID suboption and the remote ID suboption.

Figure 8: Suboption Packet Formats



VRF Support for the DHCP Relay Agent

You can configure the DHCP relay agent to forward DHCP broadcast messages from clients in a virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance to DHCP servers in a different VRF. By using a single DHCP server to provide DHCP support to clients in multiple VRFs, you can conserve IP addresses by using a single IP address pool rather than one for each VRF. For general information about VRFs, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*.

Enabling VRF support for the DHCP relay agent requires that you enable Option 82 for the DHCP relay agent.

If a DHCP request arrives on an interface that you have configured with a DHCP relay address and VRF information and the address of the DCHP server belongs to a network on an interface that is a member of a different VRF, the device inserts Option 82 information in the request and forwards it to the DHCP server in the server VRF. The Option 82 information includes the following:

VPN identifier

Name of the VRF that the interface that receives the DHCP request is a member of.

Link selection

Subnet address of the interface that receives the DHCP request. When DHCP smart relay is enabled, the link selection is filled with the subnet of the active giaddr.

Server identifier override

IP address of the interface that receives the DHCP request. When DHCP smart relay is enabled, the server identifier is filled with the active giaddr.

Note The DHCP server must support the VPN identifier, link selection, and server identifier override options.

When the device receives the DHCP response message, it strips off the Option 82 information and forwards the response to the DHCP client in the client VRF.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling VRF Support for the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 237

DHCP Smart Relay Agent

When the DHCP relay agent receives broadcast DHCP request packets from a host, it sets giaddr to the primary address of the inbound interface and forwards the packets to the server. The server allocates IP addresses from the giaddr subnet pool until the pool is exhausted and ignores further requests.

You can configure the DHCP smart relay agent to allocate IP addresses from the secondary IP address subnet pool if the first subnet pool is exhausted or the server ignores further requests. This enhancement is useful if the number of hosts is greater than the number of IP addresses in the pool or if multiple subnets are configured on an interface using secondary addresses.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling DHCP Smart Relay Globally, on page 240
Enabling or Disabling DHCP Smart Relay on a Layer 3 Interface, on page 241

About the DHCPv6 Relay Agent

DHCPv6 Relay Agent

You can configure the device to run a DHCPv6 relay agent, which forwards DHCPv6 packets between clients and servers. This feature is useful when clients and servers are not on the same physical subnet. Relay agents receive DHCPv6 messages and then generate a new DHCPv6 message to send out on another interface. The relay agent sets the gateway address (giaddr field of the DHCPv6 packet) and forwards it to the DHCPv6 server.

VRF Support for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent

You can configure the DHCPv6 relay agent to forward DHCPv6 broadcast messages from clients in a virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance to DHCPv6 servers in a different VRF. By using a single DHCPv6 server to provide DHCP support to clients in multiple VRFs, you can conserve IP addresses by using a single IP address pool rather than one for each VRF. For general information about VRFs, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling VRF Support for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent, on page 243

Licensing Requirements for DHCP

This table shows the licensing requirements for DHCP.

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	DHCP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for DHCP

DHCP has the following prerequisite:

- You should be familiar with DHCP before you configure DHCP snooping or the DHCP relay agent.

Guidelines and Limitations for DHCP

DHCP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- For secure POAP, make sure that DHCP snooping is enabled and firewall rules are set to block unintended or malicious DHCP servers.
- Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches do not support the relaying of bootp packets. However, the switches do support bootp packets that are Layer 2 switched.
- DHCP subnet broadcast is not supported.
- DHCP snooping should not be followed by DHCP relay in the network (DHCP snooping does not work when the DHCP relay is configured on the same Nexus device).
- If an ingress router ACL is configured on a Layer 3 interface that you are configuring with a DHCP server address, make sure that the router ACL permits DHCP traffic between DHCP servers and DHCP hosts.
- If you use DHCP relay where DHCP clients and servers are in different VRFs, use only one DHCP server within a VRF.
- Make sure that the DHCP configuration is synchronized across the switches in a vPC link. Otherwise, a run-time error can occur, resulting in dropped packets.
- DHCP smart relay is limited to the first 100 IP addresses of the interface on which it is enabled.
- You must configure a helper address on the interface in order to use DHCP smart relay.
- In a vPC environment with DHCP smart relay enabled, the subnet of the primary and secondary addresses of an interface should be the same on both Cisco NX-OS devices.

- When you configure DHCPv6 server addresses on an interface, a destination interface cannot be used with global IPv6 addresses.

Note For DHCP configuration limits, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Verified Scalability Guide*.

Default Settings for DHCP

This table lists the default settings for DHCP parameters.

Table 29: Default DHCP Parameters

Parameters	Default
DHCP feature	Disabled
DHCP relay agent	Enabled
DHCPv6 relay agent	Enabled
VRF support for the DHCP relay agent	Disabled
VRF support for the DHCPv6 relay agent	Disabled
DHCP Option 82 for relay agent	Disabled
DHCP smart relay agent	Disabled
DHCP server IP address	None

Configuring DHCP

Minimum DHCP Configuration

Step 1 Enable the DHCP feature.

When the DHCP feature is disabled, you cannot configure DHCP snooping.

Step 2 Enable DHCP snooping globally.

Step 3 Enable DHCP snooping on at least one VLAN.

By default, DHCP snooping is disabled on all VLANs.

Step 4 Make sure that the DHCP server is connected to the device using a trusted interface.

Step 5 (Optional) Enable the DHCP relay agent.

Step 6 (Optional) If DHCP servers and clients are in different VRFs, do the following:

a) Enable Option 82 for the DHCP relay agent.
b) Enable VRF support for the DHCP relay agent.

Step 7 (Optional) Configure an interface with the IP address of the DHCP server.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Feature, on page 235
Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 236
Enabling or Disabling Option 82 for the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 236
Enabling or Disabling VRF Support for the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 237
Configuring DHCP Server Addresses on an Interface, on page 238

Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Feature

You can enable or disable the DHCP feature on the device. By default, DHCP is disabled.

When the DHCP feature is disabled, you cannot configure the DHCP relay agent, DHCP snooping, or any of the features that depend on DHCP. In addition, all DHCP configuration is removed from the device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **feature dhcp**
3. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **feature dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature dhcp`	Enables the DHCP feature. The **no** option disables the DHCP feature and erases all DHCP configuration.
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Relay Agent

You can enable or disable the DHCP relay agent. By default, the DHCP relay agent is enabled.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ip dhcp relay**
3. (Optional) **show ip dhcp relay**
4. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ip dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch(config)# ip dhcp relay`	Enables the DHCP relay agent. The **no** option disables the DHCP relay agent.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ip dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ip dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCP relay configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Feature, on page 235

Enabling or Disabling Option 82 for the DHCP Relay Agent

You can enable or disable the device to insert and remove Option 82 information on DHCP packets forwarded by the relay agent.

By default, the DHCP relay agent does not include Option 82 information in DHCP packets.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# [**no**] **ip dhcp relay information option**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **show ip dhcp relay**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# **configure terminal**	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [**no**] **ip dhcp relay information option**	Enables the DHCP relay agent to insert and remove Option 82 information on the packets that it forwards. The Option 82 information is in binary ifindex format by default. The **no** option disables this behavior.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# **show ip dhcp relay**	Displays the DHCP relay configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# **show running-config dhcp**	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling or Disabling VRF Support for the DHCP Relay Agent

You can configure the device to support the relaying of DHCP requests that arrive on an interface in one VRF to a DHCP server in a different VRF.

Before you begin

You must enable Option 82 for the DHCP relay agent.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ip dhcp relay information option vpn**
3. [**no**] **ip dhcp relay sub-option type cisco**
4. (Optional) **show ip dhcp relay**
5. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ip dhcp relay information option vpn** **Example:** `switch(config)# ip dhcp relay information option vpn`	Enables VRF support for the DHCP relay agent. The **no** option disables this behavior.
Step 3	[**no**] **ip dhcp relay sub-option type cisco** **Example:** `switch(config)# ip dhcp relay sub-option type cisco`	Enables DHCP to use Cisco proprietary numbers 150, 152, and 151 when filling the link selection, server ID override, and VRF name/VPN ID relay agent Option 82 suboptions. The **no** option causes DHCP to use RFC numbers 5, 11, and 151 for the link selection, server ID override, and VRF name/VPN ID suboptions.
Step 4	(Optional) **show ip dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ip dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCP relay configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

VRF Support for the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 231
Enabling or Disabling Option 82 for the DHCP Relay Agent, on page 236

Configuring DHCP Server Addresses on an Interface

You can configure DHCP server IP addresses on an interface. When an inbound DHCP BOOTREQUEST packet arrives on the interface, the relay agent forwards the packet to all DHCP server IP addresses specified. The relay agent forwards replies from all DHCP servers to the host that sent the request.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCP server is correctly configured.

Determine the IP address for each DHCP server that you want to configure on the interface.

If the DHCP server is in a different VRF than the interface, ensure that you have enabled VRF support.

Note If an ingress router ACL is configured on an interface that you are configuring with a DHCP server address, ensure that the router ACL permits DHCP traffic between DHCP servers and DHCP hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Do one of the following options:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*[**.** *number*]
   - **interface vlan** *vlan-id*
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-id*[.*subchannel-id*]
3. **ip dhcp relay address** *IP-address* [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*]
4. (Optional) **show ip dhcp relay address**
5. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Do one of the following options:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*[**.** *number*]
	• **interface vlan** *vlan-id*
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-id*[.*subchannel-id*]
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		• Enters interface configuration mode, where *slot* / *port* is the physical Ethernet interface that you want to configure with a DHCP server IP address. If you want to configure a subinterface, include the *number* argument to specify the subinterface number.
		• Enters interface configuration mode, where *vlan-id* is the ID of the VLAN that you want to configure with a DHCP server IP address.
		• Enters interface configuration mode, where *channel-id* is the ID of the port channel that you want to configure with a DHCP server IP address. If you want to configure a subchannel, include the *subchannel-id* argument to specify the subchannel ID.

Step 3	**ip dhcp relay address** *IP-address* [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*] **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay address 10.132.7.120 use-vrf red`	Configures an IP address for a DHCP server to which the relay agent forwards BOOTREQUEST packets received on this interface. To configure more than one IP address, use the **ip dhcp relay address** command once per address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **show ip dhcp relay address** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show ip dhcp relay address`	Displays all the configured DHCP server addresses.
Step 5	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Enabling or Disabling the DHCP Feature, on page 235

Enabling or Disabling DHCP Smart Relay Globally

You can enable or disable DHCP smart relay globally on the device.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCP relay agent is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ip dhcp smart-relay global**
3. (Optional) **show ip dhcp relay**
4. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ip dhcp smart-relay global** **Example:** `switch(config)# ip dhcp smart-relay global`	Enables DHCP smart relay globally. The **no** form of this command disables DHCP smart relay.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	(Optional) **show ip dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch(config)# show ip dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCP smart relay configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling or Disabling DHCP Smart Relay on a Layer 3 Interface

You can enable or disable DHCP smart relay on Layer 3 interfaces.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCP relay agent is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface** *interface slot*/*port*
3. [**no**] **ip dhcp smart-relay**
4. **exit**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show ip dhcp relay**
7. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
8. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**interface** *interface slot*/*port*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		Enters interface configuration mode, where *slot*/*port* is the interface for which you want to enable or disable DHCP smart relay.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	[**no**] **ip dhcp smart-relay** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ip dhcp smart-relay`	Enables DHCP smart relay on the interface. The **no** form of this command disables DHCP smart relay on the interface.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits interface configuration mode.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# exit`
	`switch#`
		Exits global configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show ip dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch# show ip dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCP smart relay configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring DHCPv6

Enabling or Disabling the DHCPv6 Relay Agent

You can enable or disable the DHCPv6 relay agent. By default, the DHCPv6 relay agent is enabled.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay**
3. (Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*]
4. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay** **Example:** `switch(config)# ipv6 dhcp relay`	Enables the DHCPv6 relay agent. The **no** option disables the relay agent.
Step 3	(Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show ipv6 dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCPv6 relay configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Enabling or Disabling VRF Support for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent

You can configure the device to support the relaying of DHCPv6 requests that arrive on an interface in one VRF to a DHCPv6 server in a different VRF.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCPv6 relay agent is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay option vpn**
3. [**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay option type cisco**
4. (Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*]
5. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay option vpn** **Example:** `switch(config)# ipv6 dhcp relay option vpn`	Enables VRF support for the DHCPv6 relay agent. The **no** option disables this behavior.
Step 3	[**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay option type cisco** **Example:** `switch(config)# ipv6 dhcp relay option type cisco`	Causes the DHCPv6 relay agent to insert virtual subnet selection (VSS) details as part of the vendor-specific option. The **no** option causes the DHCPv6 relay agent to insert VSS details as part of the VSS option (68), which is defined in RFC-6607. This command is useful when you want to use DHCPv6 servers that do not support RFC-6607 but allocate IPv6 addresses based on the client VRF name.
Step 4	(Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show ipv6 dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCPv6 relay configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

VRF Support for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent, on page 232

Configuring DHCPv6 Server Addresses on an Interface

You can configure DHCPv6 server IP addresses on an interface. When an inbound DHCP BOOTREQUEST packet arrives on the interface, the relay agent forwards the packet to all DHCPv6 server IP addresses specified. The relay agent forwards replies from all DHCPv6 servers to the host that sent the request.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCPv6 server is correctly configured.

Determine the IP address for each DHCPv6 server that you want to configure on the interface.

If the DHCPv6 server is in a different VRF than the interface, ensure that you have enabled VRF support.

Note If an ingress router ACL is configured on an interface that you are configuring with a DHCPv6 server address, ensure that the router ACL permits DHCP traffic between DHCPv6 servers and DHCP hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. Do one of the following options:
   - **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
   - **interface port-channel** *channel-id*
3. [**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay address** *IPv6-address* [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*] [**interface** *interface*]
4. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	Do one of the following options:
	• **interface ethernet** *slot*/*port*
	• **interface port-channel** *channel-id*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		• Enters interface configuration mode, where *slot* / *port* is the physical Ethernet interface that you want to configure with a DHCPv6 server IP address.
		• Enters interface configuration mode, where *channel-id* is the ID of the port channel that you want to configure with a DHCPv6 server IP address.

Step 3	[**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay address** *IPv6-address* [**use-vrf** *vrf-name*] [**interface** *interface*] **Example:** `switch(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp relay address FF02:1::FF0E:8C6C use-vrf red`	Configures an IP address for a DHCPv6 server to which the relay agent forwards BOOTREQUEST packets received on this interface. Use the **use-vrf** option to specify the VRF name of the server if it is in a different VRF and the other argument interface is used to specify the output interface for the destination. The server address can either be a link-scoped unicast or multicast address or a global or site-local unicast or multicast address. The **interface** option is mandatory for a link-scoped server address and multicast address. It is not allowed for a global or site-scoped server address. To configure more than one IP address, use the **ipv6 dhcp relay address** command once per address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCPv6 configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring the DHCPv6 Relay Source Interface

You can configure the source interface for the DHCPv6 relay agent. By default, the DHCPv6 relay agent uses the relay agent address as the source address of the outgoing packet. Configuring the source interface enables you to use a more stable address (such as the loopback interface address) as the source address of relayed messages.

Before you begin

Ensure that the DHCP feature is enabled.

Ensure that the DHCPv6 relay agent is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. [**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface** *interface*
3. (Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*]
4. (Optional) **show running-config dhcp show running-config dhcp**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	[**no**] **ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface** *interface* **Example:** `switch(config)# ipv6 dhcp relay source-interface loopback 2`	Configures the source interface for the DHCPv6 relay agent. **Note** The DHCPv6 relay source interface can be configured globally, per interface, or both. When both the global and interface levels are configured, the interface-level configuration overrides the global configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	(Optional) **show ipv6 dhcp relay** [**interface** *interface*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show ipv6 dhcp relay`	Displays the DHCPv6 relay configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **show running-config dhcp show running-config dhcp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config dhcp`	Displays the DHCP configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the DHCP Configuration

To display DHCP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show ip dhcp relay	Displays the DHCP relay configuration.
show ipv6 dhcp relay [**interface** *interface*]	Displays the DHCPv6 relay global or interface-level configuration.
show ip dhcp relay address	Displays all the DHCP server addresses configured on the device.
show running-config dhcp [**all**]	Displays the DHCP configuration in the running configuration. **Note** The **show running-config dhcp** command displays the **ip dhcp relay** and the **ipv6 dhcp relay** commands, although these are configured by default.
show startup-config dhcp [**all**]	Displays the DHCP configuration in the startup configuration.

Monitoring DHCP

Use the **show ip dhcp relay statistics** [**interface** *interface*] command to monitor DHCP relay statistics at the global or interface level.

Use the **show ipv6 dhcp relay statistics** [**interface** *interface*] command to monitor DHCPv6 relay statistics at the global or interface level.

Clearing DHCP Relay Statistics

Use the **clear ip dhcp relay statistics** command to clear the global DHCP relay statistics.

Use the **clear ip dhcp relay statistics interface** *interface* command to clear the DHCP relay statistics for a particular interface.

Use the **clear ip dhcp global statistics** command to clear the DHCP statistics globally.

Clearing DHCPv6 Relay Statistics

Use the **clear ipv6 dhcp relay statistics** command to clear the global DHCPv6 relay statistics.

Use the **clear ipv6 dhcp relay statistics interface** *interface* command to clear the DHCPv6 relay statistics for a particular interface.

Configuration Examples for DHCP

This example shows how to enable the DHCP relay agent and configure the DHCP server IP address for Ethernet interface 2/3, where the DHCP server IP address is 10.132.7.120 and the DHCP server is in the VRF instance named red:

```
feature dhcp
ip dhcp relay
ip dhcp relay information option
ip dhcp relay information option vpn

interface ethernet 2/3
  ip dhcp relay address 10.132.7.120 use-vrf red
```

This example shows how to enable and use the DHCP smart relay agent. In this example, the device forwards the DHCP broadcast packets received on Ethernet interface 2/2 to the DHCP server (10.55.11.3), inserting 192.168.100.1 in the giaddr field. If the DHCP server has a pool configured for the 192.168.100.0/24 network, it responds. If the server does not respond, the device sends two more requests using 192.168.100.1 in the giaddr field. If the device still does not receive a response, it starts using 172.16.31.254 in the giaddr field instead.

```
feature dhcp
ip dhcp relay
ip dhcp smart-relay global

interface ethernet 2/2
  ip address 192.168.100.1/24
  ip address 172.16.31.254/24 secondary
  ip dhcp relay address 10.55.11.3
```

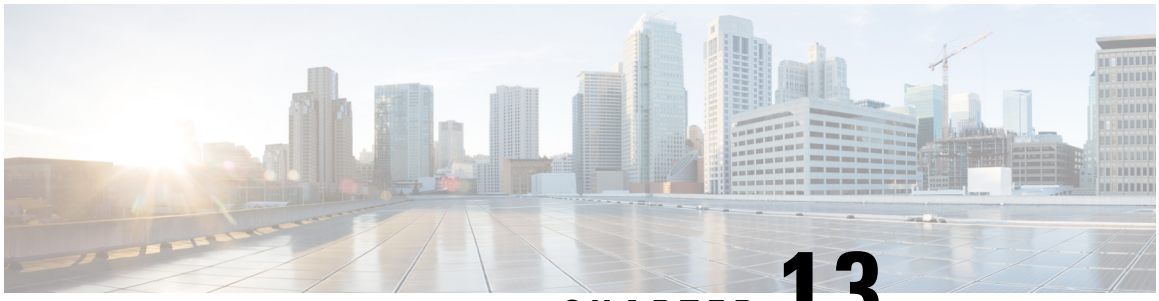
Additional References for DHCP

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
vPCs	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide*
VRFs and Layer 3 virtualization	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
RFC-2131	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2131)
RFC-3046	DHCP Relay Agent Information Option (http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3046)
RFC-6607	Virtual Subnet Selection Options for DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 (http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc6607)



CHAPTER 13

Configuring Password Encryption

This chapter describes how to configure password encryption on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About AES Password Encryption and Master Encryption Keys

You can enable strong, reversible 128-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption, also known as type-6 encryption. To start using type-6 encryption, you must enable the AES password encryption feature and configure a master encryption key, which is used to encrypt and decrypt passwords.

After you enable AES password encryption and configure a master key, all existing and newly created clear-text passwords for supported applications (currently RADIUS and TACACS+) are stored in type-6 encrypted format, unless you disable type-6 password encryption. You can also configure Cisco NX-OS to convert all existing weakly encrypted passwords to type-6 encrypted passwords.

Licensing Requirements for Password Encryption

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	Password encryption requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for Password Encryption

Password encryption has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Only users with administrator privilege (network-admin) can configure the AES password encryption feature, associated encryption and decryption commands, and master keys.
- RADIUS and TACACS+ are the only applications that can use the AES password encryption feature.
- Configurations containing type-6 encrypted passwords are not rollback compliant.
- You can enable the AES password encryption feature without a master key, but encryption starts only when a master key is present in the system.
- Deleting the master key stops type-6 encryption and causes all existing type-6 encrypted passwords to become unusable, unless the same master key is reconfigured.
- To move the device configuration to another device, either decrypt the configuration before porting it to the other device or configure the same master key on the device to which the configuration will be applied.

Default Settings for Password Encryption

This table lists the default settings for password encryption parameters.

Table 30: Default Password Encryption Parameter Settings

Parameters	Default
AES password encryption feature	Disabled
Master key	Not configured

Configuring Password Encryption

This section describes the tasks for configuring password encryption on Cisco NX-OS devices.

Configuring a Master Key and Enabling the AES Password Encryption Feature

You can configure a master key for type-6 encryption and enable the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. [**no**] **key config-key ascii**
2. **configure terminal**
3. [**no**] **feature password encryption aes**
4. (Optional) **show encryption service stat**

5. **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	[**no**] **key config-key ascii**
	Example:
	`switch# key config-key ascii`
	`New Master Key:`
	`Retype Master Key:`
		Configures a master key to be used with the AES password encryption feature. The master key can contain between 16 and 32 alphanumeric characters. You can use the **no** form of this command to delete the master key at any time.
		If you enable the AES password encryption feature before configuring a master key, a message appears stating that password encryption will not take place unless a master key is configured. If a master key is already configured, you are prompted to enter the current master key before entering a new master key.

Step 2	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 3	[**no**] **feature password encryption aes** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature password encryption aes`	Enables or disables the AES password encryption feature.
Step 4	(Optional) **show encryption service stat** **Example:** `switch(config)# show encryption service stat`	Displays the configuration status of the AES password encryption feature and the master key.
Step 5	Required: **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration. **Note** This command is necessary to synchronize the master key in the running configuration and the startup configuration.

Converting Existing Passwords to Type-6 Encrypted Passwords

You can convert existing plain or weakly encrypted passwords to type-6 encrypted passwords.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the AES password encryption feature and configured a master key.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **encryption re-encrypt obfuscated**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**encryption re-encrypt obfuscated** **Example:** `switch# encryption re-encrypt obfuscated`	Converts existing plain or weakly encrypted passwords to type-6 encrypted passwords.

Converting Type-6 Encrypted Passwords Back to Their Original States

You can convert type-6 encrypted passwords back to their original states.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured a master key.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **encryption decrypt type6**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**encryption decrypt type6**
	Example:
	`switch# encryption decrypt type6`
	`Please enter current Master Key:`
		Converts type-6 encrypted passwords back to their original states.

Deleting Type-6 Encrypted Passwords

You can delete all type-6 encrypted passwords from the Cisco NX-OS device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **encryption delete type6**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**encryption delete type6** **Example:** `switch# encryption delete type6`	Deletes all type-6 encrypted passwords.

Verifying the Password Encryption Configuration

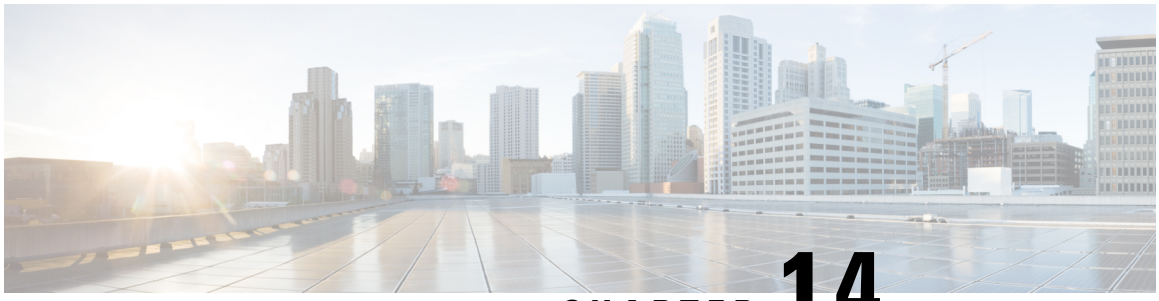
To display password encryption configuration information, perform the following task:

Command	Purpose
show encryption service stat	Displays the configuration status of the AES password encryption feature and the master key.

Configuration Examples for Password Encryption

The following example shows how to create a master key, enable the AES password encryption feature, and configure a type-6 encrypted password for a TACACS+ application:

```
key config-key ascii
  New Master Key:
  Retype Master Key:
configure terminal
feature password encryption aes
show encryption service stat
  Encryption service is enabled.
  Master Encryption Key is configured.
  Type-6 encryption is being used.
feature tacacs+
tacacs-server key Cisco123
show running-config tacacs+
  feature tacacs+
  logging level tacacs 5
  tacacs-server key 6
"JDYkqyIFWeBvzpljSfWmRZrmRSRE8syxKlOSjP9RCCkFinZbJI3GD5c6rckJR/Qju2PKLmOewbheAA=="
```



CHAPTER 14

Configuring Keychain Management

This chapter describes how to configure keychain management on a Cisco NX-OS device.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About Keychain Management

Keychain management allows you to create and maintain keychains, which are sequences of keys (sometimes called shared secrets). You can use keychains with features that secure communications with other devices by using key-based authentication. The device allows you to configure multiple keychains.

Some routing protocols that support key-based authentication can use a keychain to implement a hitless key rollover for authentication. For more information, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*.

Lifetime of a Key

To maintain stable communications, each device that uses a protocol that is secured by key-based authentication must be able to store and use more than one key for a feature at the same time. Based on the send and accept lifetimes of a key, keychain management provides a secure mechanism to handle key rollover. The device uses the lifetimes of keys to determine which keys in a keychain are active.

Each key in a keychain has two lifetimes, as follows:

Accept lifetime

The time interval within which the device accepts the key during a key exchange with another device.

Send lifetime

The time interval within which the device sends the key during a key exchange with another device.

You define the send and accept lifetimes of a key using the following parameters:

Start-time

The absolute time that the lifetime begins.

End-time

The end time can be defined in one of the following ways:

- The absolute time that the lifetime ends
- The number of seconds after the start time that the lifetime ends
- Infinite lifetime (no end-time)

During a key send lifetime, the device sends routing update packets with the key. The device does not accept communication from other devices when the key sent is not within the accept lifetime of the key on the device.

We recommend that you configure key lifetimes that overlap within every keychain. This practice avoids failure of neighbor authentication due to the absence of active keys.

Licensing Requirements for Keychain Management

This table shows the licensing requirements for keychain management.

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	Keychain management requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Prerequisites for Keychain Management

Keychain management has no prerequisites.

Guidelines and Limitations for Keychain Management

Keychain management has the following configuration guideline and limitation:

- Changing the system clock impacts when the keys are active.

Default Settings for Keychain Management

This table lists the default settings for Cisco NX-OS keychain management parameters.

Table 31: Default Keychain Management Parameters

Parameters	Default
Key chains	No keychain exists by default.
Keys	No keys are created by default when you create a new keychain.
Accept lifetime	Always valid.
Send lifetime	Always valid.
Key-string entry encryption	Unencrypted.

Configuring Keychain Management

Creating a Keychain

You can create a keychain on the device. A new keychain contains no keys.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **key chain** *name*
3. (Optional) **show key chain** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**key chain** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# key chain bgp-keys`
	`switch(config-keychain)#`
		Creates the keychain and enters keychain configuration mode.

Step 3	(Optional) **show key chain** *name* **Example:**	Displays the keychain configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-keychain)# show key chain bgp-keys`	
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-keychain)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Removing a Keychain

You can remove a keychain on the device.

Note Removing a keychain removes any keys within the keychain.

Before you begin

If you are removing a keychain, ensure that no feature uses it. If a feature is configured to use a keychain that you remove, that feature is likely to fail to communicate with other devices.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **no key chain** *name*
3. (Optional) **show key chain** *name*
4. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**no key chain** *name* **Example:** `switch(config)# no key chain bgp-keys`	Removes the keychain and any keys that the keychain contains.
Step 3	(Optional) **show key chain** *name* **Example:** `switch(config-keychain)# show key chain bgp-keys`	Confirms that the keychain no longer exists in running configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-keychain)# copy running-config startup-config`	

Configuring a Master Key and Enabling the AES Password Encryption Feature

You can configure a master key for type-6 encryption and enable the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) password encryption feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. [**no**] **key config-key ascii**
2. **configure terminal**
3. [**no**] **feature password encryption aes**
4. (Optional) **show encryption service stat**
5. **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	[**no**] **key config-key ascii**
	Example:
	`switch# key config-key ascii`
	`New Master Key:`
	`Retype Master Key:`
		Configures a master key to be used with the AES password encryption feature. The master key can contain between 16 and 32 alphanumeric characters. You can use the **no** form of this command to delete the master key at any time.
		If you enable the AES password encryption feature before configuring a master key, a message appears stating that password encryption will not take place unless a master key is configured. If a master key is already configured, you are prompted to enter the current master key before entering a new master key.

Step 2	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 3	[**no**] **feature password encryption aes** **Example:** `switch(config)# feature password encryption aes`	Enables or disables the AES password encryption feature.
Step 4	(Optional) **show encryption service stat** **Example:** `switch(config)# show encryption service stat`	Displays the configuration status of the AES password encryption feature and the master key.
Step 5	Required: **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:**	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	**Note** This command is necessary to synchronize the master key in the running configuration and the startup configuration.

Configuring Text for a Key

You can configure the text for a key. The text is the shared secret. The device stores the text in a secure format.

By default, accept and send lifetimes for a key are infinite, which means that the key is always valid. After you configure the text for a key, configure the accept and send lifetimes for the key.

Before you begin

Determine the text for the key. You can enter the text as unencrypted text or in the encrypted form that Cisco NX-OS uses to display key text when you use the **show key chain** command. Using the encrypted form is particularly helpful if you are creating key text to match a key as shown in the **show key chain** command output from another device.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **key chain** *name*
3. **key** *key-ID*
4. **key-string** [*encryption-type*] *text-string*
5. (Optional) **show key chain** *name* [**mode decrypt**]
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**key chain** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# key chain bgp-keys`
	`switch(config-keychain)#`
		Enters keychain configuration mode for the keychain that you specified.

Step 3	**key** *key-ID*
	Example:
	`switch(config-keychain)# key 13`
	`switch(config-keychain-key)#`
		Enters key configuration mode for the key that you specified. The *key-ID* argument must be a whole number between 0 and 65535.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**key-string** [*encryption-type*] *text-string* **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# key-string 0 AS3cureStr1ng`	Configures the text string for the key. The *text-string* argument is alphanumeric, case-sensitive, and supports special characters. The *encryption-type* argument can be one of the following values: • 0—The *text-string* argument that you enter is unencrypted text. This is the default. • 7—The *text-string* argument that you enter is encrypted. The encryption method is a Cisco proprietary method. This option is useful when you are entering a text string based on the encrypted output of a **show key chain** command that you ran on another Cisco NX-OS device.
Step 5	(Optional) **show key chain** *name* [**mode decrypt**] **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# show key chain bgp-keys`	Shows the keychain configuration, including the key text configuration. The mode decrypt option, which can be used by a device administrator only, displays the keys in cleartext.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring Accept and Send Lifetimes for a Key

You can configure the accept lifetime and send lifetime for a key. By default, accept and send lifetimes for a key are infinite, which means that the key is always valid.

Note We recommend that you configure the keys in a keychain to have overlapping lifetimes. This practice prevents loss of key-secured communication due to moments where no key is active.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **key chain** *name*
3. **key** *key-ID*
4. **accept-lifetime** [**local**] *start-time* **duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*]
5. **send-lifetime** [**local**] *start-time* **duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*]
6. (Optional) **show key chain** *name* [**mode decrypt**]
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**key chain** *name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# key chain bgp-keys`
	`switch(config-keychain)#`
		Enters keychain configuration mode for the keychain that you specified.

Step 3	**key** *key-ID*
	Example:
	`switch(config-keychain)# key 13`
	`switch(config-keychain-key)#`
		Enters key configuration mode for the key that you specified.

Step 4	**accept-lifetime** [**local**] *start-time* **duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*] **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Jun 13 2013 23:59:59 Sep 12 2013`	Configures an accept lifetime for the key. By default, the device treats the *start-time* and *end-time* arguments as UTC. If you specify the **local** keyword, the device treats these times as local times. The *start-time* argument is the time of day and date that the key becomes active. Specify the end of the lifetime with one of the following options: • **duration** *duration-value* —The length of the lifetime in seconds. The maximum length is 2147483646 seconds (approximately 68 years). • **infinite**—The accept lifetime of the key never expires. • *end-time* —The *end-time* argument is the time of day and date that the key becomes inactive.
Step 5	**send-lifetime** [**local**] *start-time* **duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*] **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# send-lifetime 00:00:00 Jun 13 2013 23:59:59 Aug 12 2013`	Configures a send lifetime for the key. By default, the device treats the *start-time* and *end-time* arguments as UTC. If you specify the **local** keyword, the device treats these times as local times. The *start-time* argument is the time of day and date that the key becomes active. You can specify the end of the send lifetime with one of the following options: • **duration** *duration-value* —The length of the lifetime in seconds. The maximum length is 2147483646 seconds (approximately 68 years). • **infinite**—The send lifetime of the key never expires.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• *end-time* —The *end-time* argument is the time of day and date that the key becomes inactive.
Step 6	(Optional) **show key chain** *name* [**mode decrypt**] **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# show key chain bgp-keys`	Shows the keychain configuration, including the key text configuration. The mode decrypt option, which can be used by a device administrator only, displays the keys in cleartext.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config-keychain-key)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Determining Active Key Lifetimes

To determine which keys within a key chain have active accept or send lifetimes, use the command in this table.

Command	Purpose
show key chain	Displays the key chains configured on the device.

Verifying the Keychain Management Configuration

To display keychain management configuration information, perform the following task:

Command	Purpose
show key chain *name*	Displays the keychains configured on the device.

Configuration Example for Keychain Management

This example shows how to configure a keychain named bgp keys. Each key text string is encrypted. Each key has longer accept lifetimes than send lifetimes, to help prevent lost communications by accidentally configuring a time in which there are no active keys.

```
key chain bgp-keys
  key 0
    key-string 7 zqdest
    accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Jun 01 2013 23:59:59 Sep 12 2013
    send-lifetime 00:00:00 Jun 01 2013 23:59:59 Aug 12 2013
  key 1
    key-string 7 uaeqdyito
    accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Aug 12 2013 23:59:59 May 12 2013
    send-lifetime 00:00:00 Sep 12 2013 23:59:59 Aug 12 2013
  key 2
```

```
key-string 7 eekgsdyd
accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Nov 12 2013 23:59:59 Mar 12 2013
send-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 12 2013 23:59:59 Feb 12 2013
```

Where to Go Next

For information about routing features that use keychains, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*.

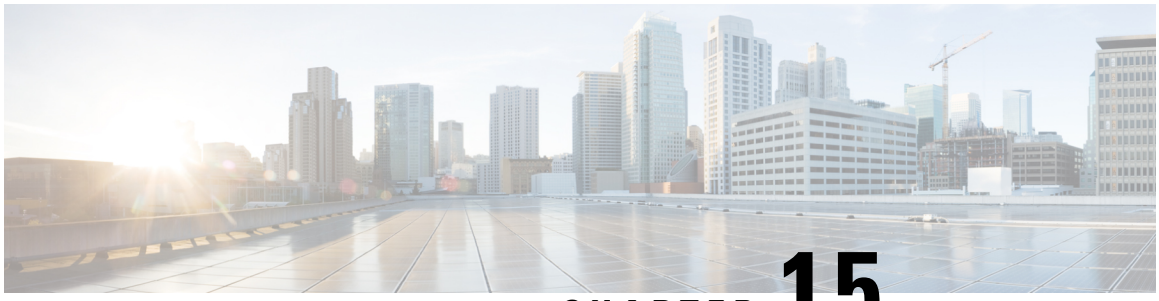
Additional References for Keychain Management

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Border Gateway Protocol	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*
OSPFv2	*Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—



CHAPTER 15

Configuring Traffic Storm Control

This chapter describes how to configure traffic storm control on the Cisco NX-OS device.

This chapter includes the following sections:

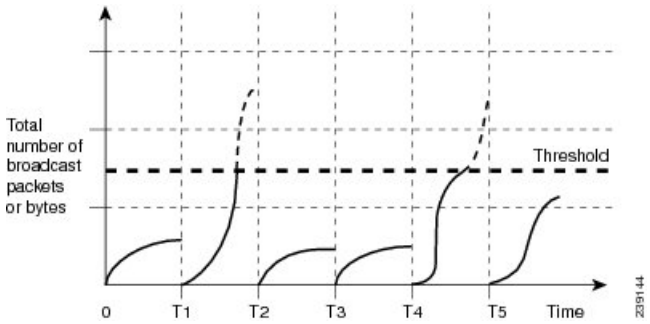
About Traffic Storm Control

A traffic storm occurs when packets flood the LAN, creating excessive traffic and degrading network performance. You can use the traffic storm control feature to prevent disruptions on Layer 2 ports by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic storm on physical interfaces.

Traffic storm control (also called traffic suppression) allows you to monitor the levels of the incoming broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic over a 3.9-millisecond interval. During this interval, the traffic level, which is a percentage of the total available bandwidth of the port, is compared with the traffic storm control level that you configured. When the ingress traffic reaches the traffic storm control level that is configured on the port, traffic storm control drops the traffic until the interval ends.

This table shows the broadcast traffic patterns on a Layer 2 interface over a given interval. In this example, traffic storm control occurs between times T1 and T2 and between T4 and T5. During those intervals, the amount of broadcast traffic exceeded the configured threshold.

Figure 9: Broadcast Suppression



The traffic storm control threshold numbers and the time interval allow the traffic storm control algorithm to work with different levels of granularity. A higher threshold allows more packets to pass through.

Traffic storm control on the Cisco Nexus 9000v device is implemented in the hardware. The traffic storm control circuitry monitors packets that pass from a Layer 2 interface to the switching bus. Using the Individual/Group bit in the packet destination address, the circuitry determines if the packet is unicast or broadcast, tracks the current count of packets within the 3.9-millisecond interval, and filters out subsequent packets when a threshold is reached.

Traffic storm control uses a bandwidth-based method to measure traffic. You set the percentage of total available bandwidth that the controlled traffic can use. Because packets do not arrive at uniform intervals, the 3.9-millisecond interval can affect the behavior of traffic storm control.

The following are examples of how traffic storm control operation is affected

- If you enable broadcast traffic storm control, and broadcast traffic exceeds the level within the 3.9-millisecond interval, traffic storm control drops all broadcast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable broadcast and multicast traffic storm control, and the combined broadcast and multicast traffic exceeds the level within the 3.9-millisecond interval, traffic storm control drops all broadcast and multicast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable broadcast and multicast traffic storm control, and broadcast traffic exceeds the level within the 3.9-millisecond interval, traffic storm control drops all broadcast and multicast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable broadcast and multicast traffic storm control, and multicast traffic exceeds the level within the 3.9-millisecond interval, traffic storm control drops all broadcast and multicast traffic until the end of the interval.

When the traffic exceeds the configured level, you can configure traffic storm control to perform the following optional corrective actions :

- Shut down—When ingress traffic exceeds the traffic storm control level that is configured on a port, traffic storm control puts the port into the error-disabled state. To reenable this port, you can use either the **shutdown** and **no shutdown** options on the configured interface, or the error-disable detection and recovery feature. You are recommended to use the **errdisable recovery cause storm-control** command for error-disable detection and recovery along with the **errdisable recovery interval** command for defining the recovery interval. The interval can range between 30 and 65535 seconds.
- Trap—You can configure traffic storm control to generate an SNMP trap when ingress traffic exceeds the configured traffic storm control level. The SNMP trap action is enabled by default. However, storm

control traps are not rate-limited by default. You can control the number of traps generated per minute by using the **snmp-server enable traps storm-control trap-rate** command.

By default, Cisco NX-OS takes no corrective action when traffic exceeds the configured level.

Licensing Requirements for Traffic Storm Control

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	Traffic storm control requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for Traffic Storm Control

Traffic storm control has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can configure traffic storm control on a port-channel interface.
- Specify the traffic storm control level as a percentage of the total interface bandwidth:
  - The level can be from 0 to 100.
  - The optional fraction of a level can be from 0 to 99.
  - 100 percent means no traffic storm control.
  - 0.0 percent suppresses all traffic.
- If you have configured a SVI for the VLAN on Cisco Nexus 9200, 9300-EX platform switches, or on the N9K-X9700-FX3 line cards, storm control broadcast does not work for ARP traffic (ARP request).
- Local link and hardware limitations prevent storm-control drops from being counted separately. Instead, storm-control drops are counted with other drops in the discards counter.
- Because of hardware limitations and the method by which packets of different sizes are counted, the traffic storm control level percentage is an approximation. Depending on the sizes of the frames that make up the incoming traffic, the actual enforced level might differ from the configured level by several percentage points.
- Due to a hardware limitation, the output for the **show interface counters storm-control** command does not show ARP suppressions when storm control is configured and the interface is actually suppressing ARP broadcast traffic. This limitation can lead to the configured action not being triggered but the incoming ARP broadcast traffic being correctly storm suppressed.
- Due to a hardware limitation, the packet drop counter cannot distinguish between packet drops caused by a traffic storm and packet drops caused by other discarded input frames. This limitation can lead to the configured action being triggered even in the absence of a traffic storm.
- Due to a hardware limitation, storm suppression packet statistics are not supported on uplink ports.

- Due to a hardware limitation, storm suppression packet statistics do not include broadcast traffic on VLANs with an active switched virtual interface (SVI).
- Due to a design limitation, storm suppression packet statistics do not work if the configured level is 0.0, which is meant to suppress all incoming storm packets.
- Traffic storm control is not supported on 100G ports on the Cisco Nexus 9300 Series switches. It is supported on the Cisco Nexus 9300-EX/FX and FX2 Series switches and the Cisco Nexus 9500 Series switches with the 9700-EX/FX line card.
- Traffic storm control is not supported on FEX interfaces.
- Traffic storm control is only for ingress traffic, specifically for unknown unicast, unknown multicast, and broadcast traffic.
- When port channel members are error disabled due to a configured action, all individual member ports should be flapped to recover from the error disabled state.

Default Settings for Traffic Storm Control

This table lists the default settings for traffic storm control parameters.

Table 32: Default Traffic Storm Control Parameters

Parameters	Default
Traffic storm control	Disabled
Threshold percentage	100

Configuring Traffic Storm Control

You can set the percentage of total available bandwidth that the controlled traffic can use.

Note Traffic storm control uses a 3.9-millisecond interval that can affect the behavior of traffic storm control.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface** {**ethernet** *slot*/*port* | **port-channel** *number*}
3. [**no**] **storm-control** {**broadcast** | **multicast** | **unicast**} **level** { *<level-value %>* | }
4. [**no**] **storm-control action trap**
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **show running-config interface** {**ethernet** *slot*/*port* | **port-channel** *number*}
7. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**interface** {**ethernet** *slot*/*port* | **port-channel** *number*}
	Example:
	`switch# interface ethernet 1/1`
	`switch(config-if)#`
		Enters interface configuration mode.

Step 3	[**no**] **storm-control** {**broadcast** | **multicast** | **unicast**} **level** { *<level-value %>* | }
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# storm-control unicast level 40`
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# storm-control broadcast level pps 8000`
		Configures traffic storm control for traffic on the interface. You can also configure bandwidth level as a percentage either of port capacity or packets-per-second. The default state is disabled.

Step 4	[**no**] **storm-control action trap** **Example:** `switch(config-if)# storm-control action trap`	Generates an SNMP trap (defined in CISCO-PORT-STORM-CONTROL-MIB) and a syslog message when the traffic storm control limit is reached.

Step 5	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-if)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits interface configuration mode.

Step 6	(Optional) **show running-config interface** {**ethernet** *slot*/*port* | **port-channel** *number*} **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config interface ethernet 1/1`	Displays the traffic storm control configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying Traffic Storm Control Configuration

To display traffic storm control configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show running-config interface	Displays the traffic storm control configuration.

Monitoring Traffic Storm Control Counters

You can monitor the counters the Cisco NX-OS device maintains for traffic storm control activity.

Command	Purpose
show interface [**ethernet** *slot*/*port* | **port-channel** *number*] **counters storm-control**	Displays the traffic storm control counters.

Configuration Examples for Traffic Storm Control

The following example shows how to configure traffic storm control:

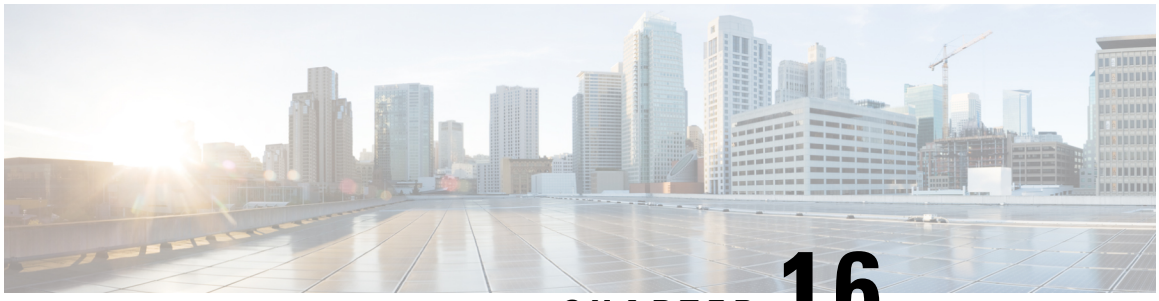
```
switch(config)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config)# storm-control broadcast level 40
switch(config)# storm-control multicast level 40
switch(config)# storm-control unicast level 40
```

Additional References for Traffic Storm Control

This section includes additional information related to implementing traffic storm control.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*



CHAPTER 16

Configuring Control Plane Policing

This chapter contains the following sections:

About CoPP

Control Plane Policing (CoPP) protects the control plane and separates it from the data plane, which ensures network stability, reachability, and packet delivery.

This feature allows a policy map to be applied to the control plane. This policy map looks like a normal QoS policy and is applied to all traffic entering the switch from a non-management port. A common attack vector for network devices is the denial-of-service (DoS) attack, where excessive traffic is directed at the device interfaces.

The Cisco NX-OS device provides CoPP to prevent DoS attacks from impacting performance. Such attacks, which can be perpetrated either inadvertently or maliciously, typically involve high rates of traffic destined to the supervisor module or CPU itself.

The supervisor module divides the traffic that it manages into three functional components or planes:

Data plane
: Handles all the data traffic. The basic functionality of a Cisco NX-OS device is to forward packets from one interface to another. The packets that are not meant for the switch itself are called the transit packets. These packets are handled by the data plane.

Control plane
Handles all routing protocol control traffic. These protocols, such as the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) and the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) Protocol, send control packets between devices. These packets are destined to router addresses and are called control plane packets.

Management plane
Runs the components meant for Cisco NX-OS device management purposes such as the command-line interface (CLI) and Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

The supervisor module has both the management plane and control plane and is critical to the operation of the network. Any disruption or attacks to the supervisor module will result in serious network outages. For example, excessive traffic to the supervisor module could overload and slow down the performance of the entire Cisco NX-OS device. For example, a DoS attack on the supervisor module could generate IP traffic streams to the control plane at a very high rate, forcing the control plane to spend a large amount of time in handling these packets and preventing the control plane from processing genuine traffic.

Examples of DoS attacks include:

- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) echo requests
- IP fragments
- TCP SYN flooding

These attacks can impact the device performance and have the following negative effects:

- Reduced service quality (such as poor voice, video, or critical applications traffic)
- High route processor or switch processor CPU utilization
- Route flaps due to loss of routing protocol updates or keepalives
- Unstable Layer 2 topology
- Slow or unresponsive interactive sessions with the CLI
- Processor resource exhaustion, such as the memory and buffers
- Indiscriminate drops of incoming packets

Caution It is important to ensure that you protect the supervisor module from accidental or malicious attacks by configuring control plane protection.

Control Plane Protection

To protect the control plane, the Cisco NX-OS device segregates different packets destined for the control plane into different classes. Once these classes are identified, the Cisco NX-OS device polices the packets, which ensures that the supervisor module is not overwhelmed.

Control Plane Packet Types

Different types of packets can reach the control plane:

Receive packets
Packets that have the destination address of a router. The destination address can be a Layer 2 address (such as a router MAC address) or a Layer 3 address (such as the IP address of a router interface). These packets include router updates and keepalive messages. Multicast packets can also be in this category where packets are sent to multicast addresses that are used by a router.

Exception packets
Packets that need special handling by the supervisor module. For example, if a destination address is not present in the Forwarding Information Base (FIB) and results in a miss, the supervisor module sends an ICMP unreachable packet back to the sender. Another example is a packet with IP options set.

The following exceptions are possible from line cards only:

- match exception ip option
- match exception ipv6 option
- match exception ttl-failure

The following exceptions are possible from fabric modules only:

- match exception ipv6 icmp unreachable
- match exception ip icmp unreachable

The following exceptions are possible from line cards and fabric modules:

- match exception mtu-failure

Redirected packets
Packets that are redirected to the supervisor module.

Glean packets
If a Layer 2 MAC address for a destination IP address is not present in the FIB, the supervisor module receives the packet and sends an ARP request to the host.

All of these different packets could be maliciously used to attack the control plane and overwhelm the Cisco NX-OS device. CoPP classifies these packets to different classes and provides a mechanism to individually control the rate at which the supervisor module receives these packets.

Classification for CoPP

For effective protection, the Cisco NX-OS device classifies the packets that reach the supervisor modules to allow you to apply different rate controlling policies based on the type of the packet. For example, you might want to be less strict with a protocol packet such as Hello messages but more strict with a packet that is sent to the supervisor module because the IP option is set. You configure packet classifications and rate controlling policies using class maps and policy maps.

Rate Controlling Mechanisms

Once the packets are classified, the Cisco NX-OS device has different mechanisms to control the rate at which packets arrive at the supervisor module. Two mechanisms control the rate of traffic to the supervisor module. One is called policing and the other is called rate limiting.

Using hardware policers, you can define separate actions for traffic that conforms to or violates certain conditions. The actions can transmit the packet, mark down the packet, or drop the packet.

You can configure the following parameters for policing:

Committed information rate (CIR)
Desired bandwidth, specified as a bit rate or a percentage of the link rate.

Committed burst (BC)
Size of a traffic burst that can exceed the CIR within a given unit of time and not impact scheduling

In addition, you can set separate actions such as transmit or drop for conform and violate traffic.

For more information on policing parameters, see the *Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*.

Default Policing Policies

When you bring up your Cisco NX-OS device for the first time, the Cisco NX-OS software installs the default copp-system-p-policy-strict policy to protect the supervisor module from DoS attacks. You can set the level of protection by choosing one of the following CoPP policy options from the initial setup utility:

- Strict—This policy is 1 rate and 2 color.
- Moderate—This policy is 1 rate and 2 color. The important class burst size is greater than the strict policy but less than the lenient policy.
- Lenient—This policy is 1 rate and 2 color. The important class burst size is greater than the moderate policy but less than the dense policy.
- Dense—This policy is 1 rate and 2 color. The policer CIR values are less than the strict policy.
- Skip—No control plane policy is applied. (Cisco does not recommend using the Skip option because it will impact the control plane of the network.)

If you do not select an option or choose not to execute the setup utility, the software applies strict policing. We recommend that you start with the strict policy and later modify the CoPP policies as required.

Note Strict policing is not applied by default when using POAP, so you must configure a CoPP policy.

The copp-system-p-policy policy has optimized values suitable for basic device operations. You must add specific class and access-control list (ACL) rules that meet your DoS protection requirements. The default CoPP policy does not change when you upgrade the software.

Caution Selecting the skip option and not subsequently configuring CoPP protection can leave your Cisco NX-OS device vulnerable to DoS attacks.

You can reassign the CoPP default policy by entering the setup utility again using the **setup** command from the CLI prompt or by using the **copp profile** command.

Related Topics
Changing or Reapplying the Default CoPP Policy, on page 298

Default Class Maps - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1)

The copp-system-class-critical class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-critical
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-bgp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-rip
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-vpc
```

```
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-bgp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ospf
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-rip6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-eigrp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ospf6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-eigrp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-auto-rp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l2pt
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l3-isis
```

The copp-system-class-exception class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-exception
  match exception ip option
  match exception ip icmp unreachable
  match exception ipv6 option
  match exception ipv6 icmp unreachable
```

The copp-system-class-exception-diag class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-exception-diag
  match exception ttl-failure
  match exception mtu-failure
```

The copp-system-class-important class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-important
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-glbp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-hsrp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-vrrp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-wccp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-hsrp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-lldp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-icmp6-msgs
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-flow-control
```

The copp-system-class-l2-default class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l2-default
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-undesirable
```

The copp-system-class-l2-unpoliced class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-stp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-lacp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-cfsoe
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-sdp-srp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l2-tunnel
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-cdp-udld-vtp
```

The copp-system-class-l3mc-data class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
  match exception multicast rpf-failure
  match exception multicast dest-miss
```

The copp-system-class-l3uc-data class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
  match exception glean
```

The copp-system-class-management class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-management
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ftp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ntp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ssh
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ntp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-sftp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-snmp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ssh6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tftp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tftp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-radius
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tacacs
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-telnet
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-radius6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tacacs6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-telnet6
```

The copp-system-class-monitoring class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-monitoring
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-icmp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-icmp6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-traceroute
```

The copp-system-class-multicast-router class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-multicast-router
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-msdp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim6
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim-reg
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim6-reg
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim-mdt-join
```

The copp-system-class-normal class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-dot1x
  match protocol arp
```

The copp-system-class-normal-dhcp class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-dhcp
```

The copp-system-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-dhcp-relay-response
```

The copp-system-class-normal-igmp class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-igmp
```

The copp-system-class-redirect class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-redirect
```

The copp-system-class-undesirable class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-undesirable
  match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-undesirable
  match exception multicast sg-rpf-failure
```

Default Class Maps - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The copp-system-class-critical class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-critical
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-bgp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-rip
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-vpc
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-bgp6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-msdp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ospf
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-rip6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-eigrp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ospf6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-eigrp6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-auto-rp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l2pt
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l3-isis
```

The copp-system-class-exception class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-exception
    match exception ip option
      match exception ip icmp unreachable
      match exception ttl-failure
      match exception ipv6 option
      match exception mtu-failure
```

The copp-system-class-important class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-important
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-hsrp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-vrrp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-hsrp6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim-reg
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-lldp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-pim-mdt-join
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-flow-control
```

The copp-system-class-l2-default class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-undesirable
```

The copp-system-class-l2-unpoliced class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-stp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-lacp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-sdp-srp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-l2-tunnel
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-mac-cdp-udld-vtp
```

The copp-system-class-l3mc-data class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
    match exception multicast rpf-failure
    match exception multicast dest-miss
```

The copp-system-class-l3uc-data class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
    match exception glean
```

The copp-system-class-management class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-management
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ftp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ntp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ssh
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ntp6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-sftp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-snmp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-ssh6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tftp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tftp6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-radius
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tacacs
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-telnet
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-radius6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-tacacs6
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-telnet6
```

The copp-system-class-monitoring class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-monitoring
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-icmp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-traceroute
```

The copp-system-class-normal class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal
    match protocol arp
```

The copp-system-class-normal-dhcp class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-dhcp
```

The copp-system-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-dhcp-relay-response
```

The copp-system-class-normal-igmp class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-igmp
```

The copp-system-class-redirect class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-redirect
```

The copp-system-class-undesirable class has the following configuration:

```
class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-undesirable
    multicast sg-rpf-failure
```

Strict Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1)

The strict CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-strict
  class copp-system-p-class-critical
    set cos 7
    police cir 19000 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-important
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-multicast-router
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-management
    set cos 2
    police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
    set cos 1
    police cir 400 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
    set cos 1
    police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-redirect
    set cos 1
    police cir 150 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

```
  class copp-system-p-class-exception
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception-diag
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
    set cos 1
    police cir 75 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
    set cos 7
    police cir 20000 pps bc 8192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    set cos 0
    police cir 15 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class class-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Strict Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The strict CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-strict
    class copp-system-p-class-critical
      set cos 7
      police cir 19000 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-important
      set cos 6
      police cir 500 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-management
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
      set cos 2
     police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
      set cos 1
      police cir 400 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
      set cos 1
      police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-redirect
      set cos 1
      police cir 150 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-exception
      set cos 1
      police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
      set cos 1
      police cir 75 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

```
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
   set cos 7
    police cir 20000 pps bc 4096 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    set cos 0
    police cir 15 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class class-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Moderate Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1)

The moderate CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-moderate
  class copp-system-p-class-critical
    set cos 7
    police cir 19000 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-important
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-multicast-router
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-management
    set cos 2
    police cir 3000 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
    set cos 1
    police cir 400 pps bc 96 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
    set cos 1
    police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-redirect
    set cos 1
    police cir 150 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception-diag
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
    set cos 1
    police cir 75 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
    set cos 7
    police cir 20000 pps bc 8192 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

```
  class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    set cos 0
    police cir 15 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class class-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Moderate Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The moderate CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-moderate
    class copp-system-p-class-critical
      set cos 7
      police cir 19000 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-important
      set cos 6
      police cir 500 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-management
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
      set cos 2
      police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
      set cos 1
      police cir 400 pps bc 96 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
      set cos 1
      police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-redirect
      set cos 1
      police cir 150 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-exception
      set cos 1
      police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
      set cos 1
      police cir 75 pps bc 192 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
      set cos 7
      police cir 20000 pps bc 4096 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
      set cos 0
      police cir 15 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
      set cos 0
      police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class class-default
      set cos 0
```

```
      police cir 50 pps bc 48 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Lenient Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1)

The lenient CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-lenient
  class copp-system-p-class-critical
    set cos 7
    police cir 19000 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-important
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-multicast-router
    set cos 6
    police cir 3000 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-management
    set cos 2
    police cir 3000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
    set cos 1
    police cir 300 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
    set cos 1
    police cir 400 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
    set cos 1
    police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-redirect
    set cos 1
    police cir 150 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception-diag
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
    set cos 1
    police cir 75 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
    set cos 7
    police cir 20000 pps bc 8192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    set cos 0
    police cir 15 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class class-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Lenient Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The lenient CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-lenient
    class copp-system-p-class-critical
      set cos 7
      police cir 19000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-important
      set cos 6
      police cir 500 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-management
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
      set cos 2
      police cir 3000 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
      set cos 2
      police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
      set cos 1
      police cir 300 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
      set cos 1
      police cir 400 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
      set cos 1
      police cir 6000 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-redirect
      set cos 1
      police cir 150 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-exception
      set cos 1
      police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
      set cos 1
      police cir 75 pps bc 256 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
      set cos 7
      police cir 20000 pps bc 4096 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
      set cos 0
      police cir 15 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
      set cos 0
      police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class class-default
      set cos 0
      police cir 50 pps bc 64 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Dense Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I2(1)

The dense CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-dense
  class copp-system-p-class-critical
    set cos 7
    police cir 2500 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-important
```

```
    set cos 6
    police cir 1200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-multicast-router
    set cos 6
    police cir 1200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-management
    set cos 2
    police cir 1200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 1200 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
    set cos 3
    police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal
    set cos 1
    police cir 150 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
    set cos 1
    police cir 150 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
    set cos 1
    police cir 200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
    set cos 1
    police cir 2500 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-redirect
    set cos 1
    police cir 100 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-exception-diag
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
    set cos 1
    police cir 50 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
    set cos 7
    police cir 20000 pps bc 8192 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
    set cos 0
    police cir 15 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 25 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
  class class-default
    set cos 0
    police cir 25 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Dense Default CoPP Policy - For Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1(2)I1(1)

The dense CoPP policy has the following configuration:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy-dense
    class copp-system-p-class-critical
      set cos 7
      police cir 2500 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-important
      set cos 6
      police cir 300 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
    class copp-system-p-class-management
```

```
  set cos 2
  police cir 1200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-l3mc-data
  set cos 2
  police cir 1200 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-l3uc-data
  set cos 2
  police cir 250 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-normal
  set cos 1
  police cir 150 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp
  set cos 1
  police cir 150 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-normal-dhcp-relay-response
  set cos 1
  police cir 200 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-normal-igmp
  set cos 1
  police cir 2500 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-redirect
  set cos 1
  police cir 100 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-exception
  set cos 1
  police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-monitoring
  set cos 1
  police cir 50 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-l2-unpoliced
  set cos 7
  police cir 20000 pps bc 4096 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-undesirable
  set cos 0
  police cir 15 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class copp-system-p-class-l2-default
  set cos 0
  police cir 25 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
class class-default
  set cos 0
  police cir 25 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop
```

Packets Per Second Credit Limit

The aggregate packets per second (PPS) for a given policy (sum of PPS of each class part of the policy) is capped by an upper PPS Credit Limit (PCL). If an increase in PPS of a given class causes a PCL exceed, the configuration is rejected. To increase the desired PPS, the additional PPS beyond PCL should be decreased from other class(es).

Modular QoS Command-Line Interface

CoPP uses the Modular Quality of Service Command-Line Interface (MQC). MQC is a CLI structure that allows you to define a traffic class, create a traffic policy (policy map), and attach the traffic policy to an interface. The traffic policy contains the CoPP feature that will be applied to the traffic class.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Define a traffic class using the **class-map** command. A traffic class is used to classify traffic.

2. Create a traffic policy using the **policy-map** command. A traffic policy (policy map) contains a traffic class and one or more CoPP features that will be applied to the traffic class. The CoPP features in the traffic policy determine how to treat the classified traffic.
3. Attach the traffic policy (policy map) to the control plane using the **control-plane** and **service-policy** commands.

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1 Define a traffic class using the **class-map** command. A traffic class is used to classify traffic.

This example shows how to create a new class-map called copp-sample-class:

```
class-map type control-plane copp-sample-class
```

Step 2 Create a traffic policy using the **policy-map** command. A traffic policy (policy map) contains a traffic class and one or more CoPP features that will be applied to the traffic class. The CoPP features in the traffic policy determine how to treat the classified traffic.

Step 3 Attach the traffic policy (policy map) to the control plane using the **control-plane** and **service-policy** commands.

This example shows how to attach the policy map to the control plane:

```
control-plane
service-policy input copp-system-policy
```

Note The copp-system-policy is always configured and applied. There is no need to use this command explicitly.

CoPP and the Management Interface

The Cisco NX-OS device supports only hardware-based CoPP, which does not support the management interface (mgmt0). The out-of-band mgmt0 interface connects directly to the CPU and does not pass through the in-band traffic hardware where CoPP is implemented.

On the mgmt0 interface, ACLs can be configured to give or deny access to a particular type of traffic.

Related Topics

Configuring IP ACLs, on page 157
Configuring MAC ACLs, on page 211

Licensing Requirements for CoPP

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	CoPP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for CoPP

CoPP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- We recommend that you use the strict default CoPP policy initially and then later modify the CoPP policies based on the data center and application requirements.
- Customizing CoPP is an ongoing process. CoPP must be configured according to the protocols and features used in your specific environment as well as the supervisor features that are required by the server environment. As these protocols and features change, CoPP must be modified.
- We recommend that you continuously monitor CoPP. If drops occur, determine if CoPP dropped traffic unintentionally or in response to a malfunction or attack. In either event, analyze the situation and evaluate the need to modify the CoPP policies.
- All the traffic that you do not specify in the other class maps is put into the last class, the default class. Monitor the drops in this class and investigate if these drops are based on traffic that you do not want or the result of a feature that was not configured and you need to add.
- All broadcast traffic is sent through CoPP logic in order to determine which packets (for example, ARP and DHCP) need to be redirected through an access control list (ACL) to the router processor. Broadcast traffic that does not need to be redirected is matched against the CoPP logic, and both conforming and violated packets are counted in the hardware but not sent to the CPU. Broadcast traffic that needs to be sent to the CPU and broadcast traffic that does not need to be sent to the CPU must be separated into different classes.
- After you have configured CoPP, delete anything that is not being used, such as old class maps and unused routing protocols.
- You must ensure that the CoPP policy does not filter critical traffic such as routing protocols or interactive access to the device. Filtering this traffic could prevent remote access to the Cisco NX-OS device and require a console connection.
- The Cisco NX-OS software does not support egress CoPP or silent mode. CoPP is supported only on ingress (you cannot use the **service-policy output copp** command to the control plane interface).
- You can use the access control entry (ACE) hit counters in the hardware only for ACL logic. Use the software ACE hit counters and the **show access-lists** and **show policy-map type control-plane** commands to evaluate CPU traffic.
- The Cisco NX-OS device hardware performs CoPP on a per-forwarding-engine basis. CoPP does not support distributed policing. Therefore, you should choose rates so that the aggregate traffic does not overwhelm the supervisor module.
- If multiple flows map to the same class, individual flow statistics will not be available.
- If you upgrade from a Cisco NX-OS release that supports the CoPP feature to a Cisco NX-OS release that supports the CoPP feature with additional classes for new protocols, you must either run the setup utility using the **setup** command or use the **copp profile** command for the new CoPP classes to be available.
- Before you downgrade from a Cisco NX-OS release that supports the CoPP feature to an earlier Cisco NX-OS release that supports the CoPP feature, you should verify compatibility using the **show incompatibility nxos bootflash:** *filename* command. If an incompatibility exists, disable any features that are incompatible with the downgrade image before downgrading the software.

- You cannot disable CoPP. If you attempt to disable it, packets are rate limited at 50 packets per seconds.
- Skip CoPP policy option has been removed from the Cisco NX-OS initial setup utility because using it can impact the control plane of the network.

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Default Settings for CoPP

This table lists the default settings for CoPP parameters.

Table 33: Default CoPP Parameters Settings

Parameters	Default
Default policy	Strict
Default policy	9 policy entries **Note** The maximum number of supported policies with associated class maps is 128.
Scale factor value	1.00

Configuring CoPP

This section describes how to configure CoPP.

Configuring a Control Plane Class Map

You must configure control plane class maps for control plane policies.

You can classify traffic by matching packets based on existing ACLs. The permit and deny ACL keywords are ignored in the matching.

You can configure policies for IP version 4 (IPv4) and IP version 6 (IPv6) packets.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured the IP ACLs if you want to use ACE hit counters in the class maps.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **class-map type control-plane** [**match-all** | **match-any**] *class-map-name*

3. (Optional) **match access-group name** *access-list-name*
4. (Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **icmp redirect**
5. (Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **icmp unreachable**
6. (Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **option**
7. **match protocol arp**
8. **exit**
9. (Optional) **show class-map type control-plane** [*class-map-name*]
10. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**class-map type control-plane** [**match-all** | **match-any**] *class-map-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# class-map type control-plane ClassMapA`
	`switch(config-cmap)#`
		Specifies a control plane class map and enters class map configuration mode. The default class matching is match-any. The name can be a maximum of 64 characters long and is case sensitive.
		Note You cannot use class-default, match-all, or match-any as class map names.

Step 3	(Optional) **match access-group name** *access-list-name* **Example:** `switch(config-cmap)# match access-group name MyAccessList`	Specifies matching for an IP ACL. **Note** The permit and deny ACL keywords are ignored in the CoPP matching.
Step 4	(Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **icmp redirect** **Example:** `switch(config-cmap)# match exception ip icmp redirect`	Specifies matching for IPv4 or IPv6 ICMP redirect exception packets.
Step 5	(Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **icmp unreachable** **Example:** `switch(config-cmap)# match exception ip icmp unreachable`	Specifies matching for IPv4 or IPv6 ICMP unreachable exception packets.
Step 6	(Optional) **match exception** {**ip** | **ipv6**} **option** **Example:** `switch(config-cmap)# match exception ip option`	Specifies matching for IPv4 or IPv6 option exception packets.
Step 7	**match protocol arp** **Example:** `switch(config-cmap)# match protocol arp`	Specifies matching for IP Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) and Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) packets.

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 8	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-cmap)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits class map configuration mode.

Step 9	(Optional) **show class-map type control-plane** [*class-map-name*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show class-map type control-plane`	Displays the control plane class map configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring a Control Plane Policy Map

You must configure a policy map for CoPP, which includes policing parameters. If you do not configure a policer for a class, the following default is configured:

- 50 packets per second (pps) with a burst of 32 packets (for Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series and 3164Q, 31128PQ, 3232C, and 3264Q switches)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured a control plane class map.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **policy-map type control-plane** *policy-map-name*
3. **class** {*class-map-name* [**insert-before** *class-map-name2*] | **class-default**}
4. Enter one of the following commands:
   - **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]}
   - **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]} [**bc**] *burst-size* [*burst-size-type*]
   - **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]]} **conform transmit** [**violate drop**]
5. (Optional) **logging drop threshold** [*drop-count* [**level** *syslog-level*]]
6. (Optional) **set cos** *cos-value*
7. **exit**
8. **exit**
9. (Optional) **show policy-map type control-plane** [**expand**] [**name** *class-map-name*]
10. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**policy-map type control-plane** *policy-map-name*
	Example:
	`switch(config)# policy-map type control-plane ClassMapA`
	`switch(config-pmap)#`
		Specifies a control plane policy map and enters policy map configuration mode. The policy map name can have a maximum of 64 characters and is case sensitive.

Step 3	**class** {*class-map-name* [**insert-before** *class-map-name2*] | **class-default**}
	Example:
	`switch(config-pmap)# class ClassMapA`
	`switch(config-pmap-c)#`
		Specifies a control plane class map name or the class default and enters control plane class configuration mode.
		The class-default class map is always at the end of the class map list for a policy map.

Step 4	Enter one of the following commands: • **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]} • **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]} [**bc**] *burst-size* [*burst-size-type*] • **police** [**cir**] {*cir-rate* [*rate-type*]]} **conform transmit** [**violate drop**] **Example:** `switch(config-pmap-c)# police cir 52000 bc 1000 packets`	Specifies the committed information rate (CIR). The rate range is as follows: • 1 to 268435456 pps (for Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series and 3164Q, 31128PQ, 3232C, and 3264Q switches) The committed burst (BC) range is as follows: • 1 to 1073741 packets (for Cisco Nexus 9300 and 9500 Series and 3164Q, 31128PQ, 3232C, and 3264Q switches) The **conform transmit** action transmits the packet. **Note** You can specify the BC and conform action for the same CIR.
Step 5	(Optional) **logging drop threshold** [*drop-count* [**level** *syslog-level*]] **Example:** `switch(config-pmap-c)# logging drop threshold 100`	Specifies the threshold value for dropped packets and generates a syslog if the drop count exceeds the configured threshold. The range for the *drop-count* argument is from 1 to 8000000000 bytes. The range for the *syslog-level* argument is from 1 to 7, and the default level is 4.
Step 6	(Optional) **set cos** *cos-value* **Example:** `switch(config-pmap-c)# set cos 1`	Specifies the 802.1Q class of service (CoS) value. The range is from 0 to 7. The default value is 0.
Step 7	**exit** **Example:**	Exits policy map class configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`switch(config-pmap-c)# exit` `switch(config-pmap)#`	

Step 8	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-pmap)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits policy map configuration mode.

Step 9	(Optional) **show policy-map type control-plane** [**expand**] [**name** *class-map-name*] **Example:** `switch(config)# show policy-map type control-plane`	Displays the control plane policy map configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring a Control Plane Class Map, on page 291

Configuring the Control Plane Service Policy

You can configure one or more policy maps for the CoPP service policy.

Note When you try to change the CoPP policy and apply a custom CoPP policy, it is configured in the hardware as non-atomic, and the following system message appears:

```
This operation can cause disruption of control traffic. Proceed (y/n)?  [no] y
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT24-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT23-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT21-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT25-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT26-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT22-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
2013 Nov 13 23:16:46 switch %ACLQOS-SLOT4-5-ACLQOS_NON_ATOMIC: Non atomic ACL/QoS policy
update done for CoPP
```

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured a control plane policy map.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **control-plane**
3. [**no**] **service-policy input** *policy-map-name*
4. **exit**
5. (Optional) **show running-config copp** [**all**]
6. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**control-plane**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# control-plane`
	`switch(config-cp)#`
		Enters control plane configuration mode.

Step 3	[**no**] **service-policy input** *policy-map-name* **Example:** `switch(config-cp)# service-policy input PolicyMapA`	Specifies a policy map for the input traffic. Repeat this step if you have more than one policy map. You cannot disable CoPP. If you enter the **no** form of this command, packets are rate limited at 50 packets per seconds.

Step 4	**exit**
	Example:
	`switch(config-cp)# exit`
	`switch(config)#`
		Exits control plane configuration mode.

Step 5	(Optional) **show running-config copp** [**all**] **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config copp`	Displays the CoPP configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Related Topics

Configuring a Control Plane Policy Map, on page 293

Configuring the CoPP Scale Factor Per Line Card

You can configure the CoPP scale factor per line card.

The scale factor configuration is used to scale the policer rate of the applied CoPP policy for a particular line card. The accepted value is from 0.10 to 2.00. You can increase or reduce the policer rate for a particular line card without changing the current CoPP policy. The changes are effective immediately, so you do not need to reapply the CoPP policy.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **control-plane**
3. **scale-factor** *value* **module** *multiple-module-range*
4. (Optional) **show policy-map interface control-plane**
5. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**control-plane**
	Example:
	`switch(config)# control-plane`
	`switch(config-cp)#`
		Enters control plane configuration mode.

Step 3	**scale-factor** *value* **module** *multiple-module-range* **Example:** `switch(config-cp)# scale-factor 1.10 module 1-2`	Configures the policer rate per line card. The allowed scale factor value is from 0.10 to 2.00. When the scale factor value is configured, the policing values are multiplied by the corresponding scale factor value of the module, and it is programmed in the particular module. To revert to the default scale factor value of 1.00, use the **no scale-factor** *value* **module** *multiple-module-range* command, or explicitly set the default scale factor value to 1.00 using the **scale-factor 1 module** *multiple-module-range* command.
Step 4	(Optional) **show policy-map interface control-plane** **Example:** `switch(config-cp)# show policy-map interface control-plane`	Displays the applied scale factor values when a CoPP policy is applied.
Step 5	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing or Reapplying the Default CoPP Policy

You can change to a different default CoPP policy, or you can reapply the same default CoPP policy.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. [**no**] **copp profile** [**strict** | **moderate** | **lenient** | **dense**]
2. (Optional) **show copp status**
3. (Optional) **show running-config copp**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	[**no**] **copp profile** [**strict**	**moderate**	**lenient**	**dense**] **Example:** `switch(config)# copp profile moderate`	Applies the CoPP best practice policy. You cannot disable CoPP. If you enter the **no** form of this command, packets are rate limited at 50 packets per seconds.
Step 2	(Optional) **show copp status** **Example:** `switch(config)# show copp status`	Displays the CoPP status, including the last configuration operation and its status. This command also enables you to verify that the CoPP best practice policy is attached to the control plane.
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config copp** **Example:** `switch(config)# show running-config copp`	Displays the CoPP configuration in the running configuration.

Related Topics

Changing or Reapplying the Default CoPP Policy Using the Setup Utility, on page 303

Copying the CoPP Best Practice Policy

The CoPP best practice policy is read-only. If you want to modify its configuration, you must copy it.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **copp copy profile** {**strict** | **moderate** | **lenient** | **dense** } {**prefix** | **suffix**} *string*
2. (Optional) **show copp status**
3. (Optional) **show running-config copp**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**copp copy profile** {**strict**	**moderate**	**lenient**	**dense** } {**prefix**	**suffix**} *string* **Example:** `switch# copp copy profile strict prefix abc`	Creates a copy of the CoPP best practice policy. CoPP renames all class maps and policy maps with the specified prefix or suffix.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	(Optional) **show copp status** **Example:** `switch# show copp status`	Displays the CoPP status, including the last configuration operation and its status. This command also enables you to verify that the copied policy is not attached to the control plane.
Step 3	(Optional) **show running-config copp** **Example:** `switch# show running-config copp`	Displays the CoPP configuration in the running configuration, including the copied policy configuration.

Verifying the CoPP Configuration

To display CoPP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show policy-map type control-plane [**expand**] [**name** *policy-map-name*]	Displays the control plane policy map with associated class maps and CIR and BC values.
show policy-map interface control-plane	Displays the policy values with associated class maps and drops per policy or class map. It also displays the scale factor values when a CoPP policy is applied. When the scale factor value is the default (1.00), it is not displayed. **Note** The scale factor changes the CIR and BC values internally on each module, but the display shows the configured CIR and BC values only. The actual applied value on a module is the scale factor multiplied by the configured value.
show class-map type control-plane [*class-map-name*]	Displays the control plane class map configuration, including the ACLs that are bound to this class map.

Command	Purpose
show copp diff profile {**strict** | **moderate** | **lenient** | **dense** } [**prior-ver**] **profile** {**strict** | **moderate** | **lenient** | **dense** } **show copp diff profile**	Displays the difference between two CoPP best practice policies. When you do not include the prior-ver option, this command displays the difference between two currently applied default CoPP best practice policies (such as the currently applied strict and currently applied moderate policies). When you include the prior-ver option, this command displays the difference between a currently applied default CoPP best practice policy and a previously applied default CoPP best practice policy (such as the currently applied strict and the previously applied lenient policies).
show copp profile {**strict** | **moderate** | **lenient** | **dense** }	Displays the details of the CoPP best practice policy, along with the classes and policer values.
show running-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the user-configured access control lists (ACLs) in the running configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the running configuration.
show running-config copp [**all**]	Displays the CoPP configuration in the running configuration.
show startup-config aclmgr [**all**]	Displays the user-configured access control lists (ACLs) in the startup configuration. The **all** option displays both the default (CoPP-configured) and user-configured ACLs in the startup configuration.

Displaying the CoPP Configuration Status

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **show copp status**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# **show copp status**	Displays the configuration status for the CoPP feature.

Example

This example shows how to display the CoPP configuration status:

```
switch# show copp status
```

Monitoring CoPP

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **show policy-map interface control-plane**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# **show policy-map interface control-plane**	Displays packet-level statistics for all classes that are part of the applied CoPP policy. Statistics are specified in terms of OutPackets (packets admitted to the control plane) and DropPackets (packets dropped because of rate limiting).

Example

This example shows how to monitor CoPP:

```
switch# show policy-map interface control-plane
Control Plane

  Service-policy  input: copp-system-p-policy-strict

    class-map copp-system-p-class-critical (match-any)
      set cos 7
      police cir 19000 pps , bc 128 packets
      module 4 :
        transmitted 373977 packets;
```

```
dropped 0 packets;
```

Clearing the CoPP Statistics

SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) switch# **show policy-map interface control-plane**
2. switch# **clear copp statistics**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	(Optional) switch# **show policy-map interface control-plane**	Displays the currently applied CoPP policy and per-class statistics.
Step 2	switch# **clear copp statistics**	Clears the CoPP statistics.

Example

This example shows how to clear the CoPP statistics for your installation:

```
switch# show policy-map interface control-plane
switch# clear copp statistics
```

Configuration Examples for CoPP

This section includes example CoPP configurations.

CoPP Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure CoPP using IP ACLs and MAC ACLs:

```
configure terminal
ip access-list copp-system-p-acl-igmp
permit igmp any 10.0.0.0/24

ip access-list copp-system-p-acl-msdp
permit tcp any any eq 639

mac access-list copp-system-p-acl-arp
permit any any 0x0806

ip access-list copp-system-p-acl-tacas
permit udp any any eq 49

ip access-list copp-system-p-acl-ntp
permit udp any 10.0.1.1/23 eq 123
```

```
ip access-list copp-system-p-acl-icmp
permit icmp any any

class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-critical
match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-igmp
match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-msdp

class-map type control-plane match-any copp-system-p-class-normal
match access-group name copp-system-p-acl-icmp
match exception ip icmp redirect
match exception ip icmp unreachable
match exception ip option

policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy

class copp-system-p-class-critical
police cir 19000 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop

class copp-system-p-class-important
police cir 500 pps bc 128 packets conform transmit violate drop

class copp-system-p-class-normal
police cir 300 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop

class class-default
police cir 50 pps bc 32 packets conform transmit violate drop

control-plane
service-policy input copp-system-p-policy
```

Create CoPP class and associate ACL:

```
class-map type control-plane copp-arp-class
match access-group name copp-arp-acl
```

Add the class to the CoPP policy:

```
policy-map type control-plane copp-system-policy
class copp-arp-class
police pps 500
```

Changing or Reapplying the Default CoPP Policy Using the Setup Utility

The following example shows how to change or reapply the default CoPP policy using the setup utility.

```
switch# setup

         ---- Basic System Configuration Dialog ----

This setup utility will guide you through the basic configuration of
the system. Setup configures only enough connectivity for management
of the system.


*Note: setup is mainly used for configuring the system initially,
when no configuration is present. So setup always assumes system
defaults and not the current system configuration values.


Press Enter at anytime to skip a dialog. Use ctrl-c at anytime
to skip the remaining dialogs.
```

```
Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no)[y]: <CR>

  Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: n

  Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: n

  Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: n

  Enter the switch name : <CR>

  Enable license grace period? (yes/no) [n]: n

  Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: n

  Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: n

  Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]: <CR>

  Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: y

  Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: <CR>

    Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) : <CR>

  Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: n

  Configure default interface layer (L3/L2) [L3]: <CR>

  Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [shut]: <CR>

  Configure best practices CoPP profile (strict/moderate/lenient/dense/skip) [strict]:
strict


The following configuration will be applied:
  password strength-check
  no license grace-period
  no telnet server enable
  no system default switchport
  system default switchport shutdown
  policy-map type control-plane copp-system-p-policy

Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: <CR>

Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: y

switch#
```

Additional References for CoPP

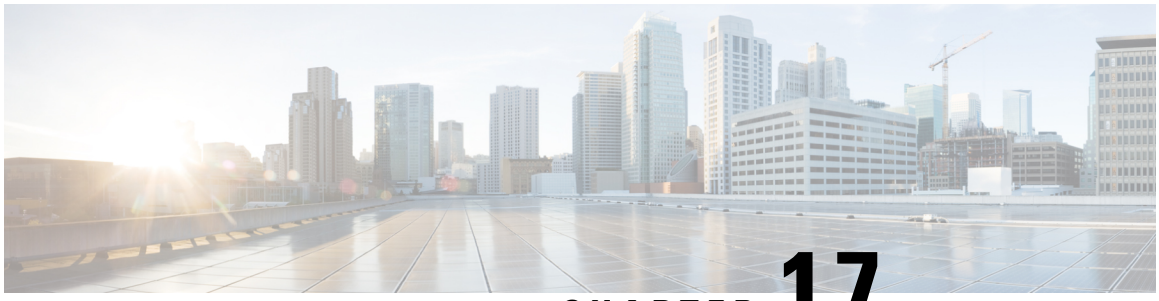
This section provides additional information related to implementing CoPP.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*

Standards

Standards	Title
RFC 2698	A Two Rate Three Color Marker



CHAPTER 17

Configuring Rate Limits

This chapter describes how to configure rate limits for supervisor-bound traffic on Cisco NX-OS devices.

This chapter includes the following sections:

About Rate Limits

Rate limits can prevent redirected packets for exceptions from overwhelming the supervisor module on a Cisco NX-OS device. You can configure rate limits in packets per second for the following types of redirected packets:

- Access-list log packets
- Bidirectional forwarding detection (BFD) packets
- Catch-all exception traffic
- Fabric Extender (FEX) traffic
- Layer 3 glean packets
- Layer 3 multicast data packets
- SPAN egress traffic—For this option only, you can configure rate limits in kilobits per second.

Licensing Requirements for Rate Limits

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	No license is required for rate limits. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the nx-os image and is provided at no extra charge to you. For an explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for Rate Limits

Rate limits has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can set rate limits for supervisor-bound exception and redirected traffic. Use control plane policing (CoPP) for other types of supervisor-bound traffic.

Note Hardware rate-limiters protect the supervisor CPU from excessive inbound traffic. The traffic rate allowed by the hardware rate-limiters is configured globally and applied to each individual I/O module. The resulting allowed rate depends on the number of I/O modules in the system. CoPP provides more granular supervisor CPU protection by utilizing the modular quality-of-service CLI (MQC).

Note If you are familiar with the Cisco IOS CLI, be aware that the Cisco NX-OS commands for this feature might differ from the Cisco IOS commands that you would use.

Related Topics

Configuring Control Plane Policing, on page 273

Default Settings for Rate Limits

This table lists the default settings for rate limits parameters.

Table 34: Default Rate Limits Parameters Settings

Parameters	Default
Access-list log packets rate limit	100 packets per second
BFD packets rate limit	10000 packets per second
Exception packets rate limit	50 packets per second

Parameters	Default
FEX packets rate limit	1000 packets per second
Layer 3 glean packets rate limit	100 packets per second
Layer 3 multicast data packets rate limit	3000 packets per second
SPAN egress rate limit	No limit

Configuring Rate Limits

You can set rate limits on supervisor-bound traffic.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **hardware rate-limiter access-list-log** {*packets* | **disable**} [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
3. **hardware rate-limiter bfd** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
4. **hardware rate-limiter exception** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
5. **hardware rate-limiter fex** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
6. **hardware rate-limiter layer-3 glean** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
7. **hardware rate-limiter layer-3 multicast local-groups** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]]
8. (Optional) **show hardware rate-limiter** [**access-list-log | bfd |exception | fex | layer-3 glean | layer-3 multicast local-groups |** |**module** *module*]
9. (Optional) **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose

Step 1	**configure terminal**
	Example:
	`switch# configure terminal`
	`switch(config)#`
		Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2	**hardware rate-limiter access-list-log** {*packets* | **disable**} [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter access-list-log 200`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for packets copied to the supervisor module for access list logging. The range is from 0 to 10000.
Step 3	**hardware rate-limiter bfd** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter bfd 500`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for bidirectional forwarding detection (BFD) packets. The range is from 0 to 10000.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**hardware rate-limiter exception** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter exception 500`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for any exception traffic in the system that is not classified by the Control Plane Policing (CoPP) policy. The range is from 0 to 10000.
Step 5	**hardware rate-limiter fex** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter fex 500`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for supervisor-bound FEX trafffic. The range is from 0 to 10000.
Step 6	**hardware rate-limiter layer-3 glean** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter layer-3 glean 500`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for Layer 3 glean packets. The range is from 0 to 10000. A node receiving traffic for a particular destination might be unable to forward traffic because it is unaware of the rewrite information or the physical layer interface behind which the destination resides. During this time, it is possible to install a glean entry in the data path for that destination. Because this might not be a pointer to the global punt adjacency, a reserved module or port value is used to punt such packets to the supervisor. This glean rate can be controlled using the given rate limiter. **Note** The CoPP policy controls the rate of glean packets that are forwarded due to global punt adjacency, and this rate limiter controls the destination-specific glean packets.
Step 7	**hardware rate-limiter layer-3 multicast local-groups** *packets* [**module** *module* [**port** *start end*]] **Example:** `switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter layer-3 multicast local-groups 300`	Configures rate limits in packets per second for Layer 3 multicast data packets that are punted for initiating a shortest-path tree (SPT) join. The range is from 0 to 10000.
Step 8	(Optional) **show hardware rate-limiter** [**access-list-log | bfd |exception | fex | layer-3 glean | layer-3 multicast local-groups |** |**module** *module*] **Example:** `switch# show hardware rate-limiter`	Displays the rate limit configuration. The module range is from 1 to 30.
Step 9	(Optional) **copy running-config startup-config** **Example:** `switch# copy running-config startup-config`	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Monitoring Rate Limits

You can monitor rate limits.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show hardware rate-limiter** [**access-list-log** | **bfd** | **exception** | **fex** | **layer-3 glean** | **layer-3 multicast local-groups** | **span-egress** | **module** *module*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**show hardware rate-limiter** [**access-list-log**	**bfd**	**exception**	**fex**	**layer-3 glean**	**layer-3 multicast local-groups**	**span-egress**	**module** *module*] **Example:** `switch# show hardware rate-limiter access-list-log`	Displays the rate limit statistics.

Clearing the Rate Limit Statistics

You can clear the rate limit statistics.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **clear hardware rate-limiter** {**all** | **access-list-log** | **bfd** | **exception** | **fex** | **layer-3 glean** | **layer-3 multicast local-groups** [**module** *module*] }

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**clear hardware rate-limiter** {**all**	**access-list-log**	**bfd**	**exception**	**fex**	**layer-3 glean**	**layer-3 multicast local-groups** [**module** *module*] } **Example:** `switch# clear hardware rate-limiter access-list-log`	Clears the rate limit statistics.

Verifying the Rate Limit Configuration

To display the rate limit configuration information, perform the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show hardware rate-limiter [**access-list-log**	**bfd**	**exception**	**fex**	**layer-3 glean**	**layer-3 multicast local-groups**	**module** *module*]	Displays the rate limit configuration.

Configuration Examples for Rate Limits

The following example shows how to configure rate limits for packets copied to the supervisor module for access list logging:

```
switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter access-list-log
switch(config)# show hardware rate-limiter access-list-log
Units for Config: packets per second
Allowed, Dropped & Total: aggregated since last clear counters


Module: 4
  R-L Class           Config           Allowed         Dropped             Total
 +------------------+--------+---------------+---------------+-----------------
+
  access-list-log         100               0               0                 0

  Port group with configuration same as default configuration
      Eth4/1-36

Module: 22
  R-L Class           Config           Allowed         Dropped             Total
 +------------------+--------+---------------+---------------+-----------------
+
  access-list-log         100               0               0                 0

  Port group with configuration same as default configuration
      Eth22/1-0
```

Additional References for Rate Limits

This section includes additional information related to implementing rate limits.

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco NX-OS licensing	*Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*